CHANGE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION
Air Traffic Organization Policy

JO 7110.65U
CHG 3

Effective Date:
August 22, 2013

SUBJ: Air Traffic Control

1. Purpose of This Change. This change transmits revised pages to Federal Aviation Administration Order JO 7110.65U, Air Traffic Control, and the Briefing Guide.

2. Audience. This change applies to all Air Traffic Organization (ATO) personnel and anyone using ATO directives.

3. Where Can I Find This Change? This change is available on the FAA Web site at http://faa.gov/air_traffic/publications and https://employees.faa.gov/tools_resources/orders_notices/.

4. Explanation of Policy Change. See the Explanation of Changes attachment which has editorial corrections and changes submitted through normal procedures. The Briefing Guide lists only new or modified material, along with background.

5. Distribution. This change is distributed to selected offices in Washington headquarters, regional offices, service area offices, the William J. Hughes Technical Center, and the Mike Monroney Aeronautical Center. Also, copies are sent to all air traffic field facilities and international aviation field offices; and to interested aviation public.

6. Disposition of Transmittal. Retain this transmittal until superseded by a new basic order.

7. Page Control Chart. See the page control chart attachment.

Elizabeth L. Ray
Vice President, Mission Support Services
Air Traffic Organization

Date: July 1, 2013

Distribution: ZAT-710, ZAT-464

Initiated By: AJV-0
Vice President, Mission Support Services

Explanation of Changes
Change 3

Direct questions through appropriate facility/service center office staff to the Office of Primary Interest (OPI)

a. 2–1–4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY
2–1–28. RVSM OPERATIONS
2–3–5. AIRCRAFT IDENTITY
2–4–20. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION

The term "Lifeguard" is being replaced by the term "MEDEVAC." The previous MEDEVAC meaning has been removed and the term "HOSP" has been added. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.607, ICAO Flight Plan 2012 Changes to FAA Order JO 7110.65, effective November 15, 2012.

b. 2–2–4. MILITARY DVFR DEPARTURES

In accordance with the 14 CFR 99.3 definition for DVFR, DVFR procedures do not apply to DOD flights. Therefore, military pilots are not required to use DVFR procedures, and this change eliminates references to the military.

c. 2–6–3. PIREP INFORMATION

This change provides guidance for air traffic controllers to solicit PIREP information regarding the smell of SO_2 in the aircraft cabin, relative to volcanic ash eruptions. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.617, AvMet Volcanic Ash, effective March 7, 2013.

d. 3–7–2. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS

This change specifies that the entrance at the end of the runway do not need to be included in the taxi instructions. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.611, Taxi and Ground Movement Operations, effective December 17, 2012.

e. 3–9–9. TAKEOFF CLEARANCE

This change corrects an error that was overlooked during organizational review and approval. Ground Control provides the distance remaining at intersections; see paragraph 3–7–1.

f. 3–10–1. LANDING INFORMATION

This change revises requirements, phraseology, and examples to allow the use of the phraseology for landing information.

g. 4–3–4. DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES

TBFM is the technology and methods used for adjusting demand/capacity imbalances at select OEP airports, departure fixes, and points across the NAS airspace. This change specifies controller responsibilities and procedures they must follow when EDCT and CFR times are in effect to accomplish time–based metering. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.612, Traffic Management Advisor (TMA), effective January 30, 2013.

h. 4–8–1. APPROACH CLEARANCES

This change provides guidance when the glideslope is unusable; all references to the MLS approach have been removed and LDA, SDF, and GLS approaches are added as examples. Provides guidance for informing the pilot when the controller requires the aircraft to fly a straight–in approach and not fly the hold–in–lieu–of procedure turn. Adds a provision that permits vectoring to any fix along the final approach course prior to the FAF and allows appropriately–equipped RNAV aircraft to be cleared to the IF on conventional and RNAV instrument approach procedures when the IF is identified with "IF" on the instrument approach procedures. Creates new procedures and graphics for aircraft on unpublished routes cleared direct to a fix between the IF and FAF and for handling RF legs contained on RNAV approaches. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.615, Approach Clearance, effective June 3, 2013.

i. 5–4–3. METHODS
5–4–5. TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF
5–4–7. POINT OUT

This change adds pertinent information to the paragraph to highlight the effect of uncoordinated aircraft speed adjustments within a sector. Controllers accept point outs and handoffs and make decisions based on visual data. When an aircraft makes uncoordinated changes in the airspace the controller's entire traffic situation can be adversely affected. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.603, Pertinent Handoff and Point Out Information, effective October 15, 2012.

j. 5–5–4. MINIMA

This change incorporates the requirements and separation standards used by San Juan CERAP in Waiver 07–E–20A into FAA JO 7110.65. This will allow San Juan CERAP to use MEARTS Single Sensor Mode separation standards while operating in Mosaic Mode. Additionally, this change adds a new paragraph to address MEARTS Mosaic Mode Utilizing Single Source Polygon.

k. 8–10–1. APPLICATION
8–10–3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION
8–10–4. LATERAL SEPARATION

This change removes "Arctic CTA" from Section 8–10, North American ICAO Region – Arctic CTA, as the NAM ICAO Region encompasses both Anchorage Arctic and Anchorage Continental CTAs. It also adds provision for 50NM longitudinal (D50) separation and 30NM lateral/30NM longitudinal (30/30) separation within the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.609, Longitudinal and Lateral Separation, effective November 2, 2012.

l. 9–2–9. SPECIAL INTEREST SITES

This change clarifies the responsibility of controllers. It also removes paragraphs b and c which will be moved to a new paragraph in FAA Order JO 7210.3. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.614, Special Interest Sites, effective April 12, 2013.

m. 9–2–22. OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT

This change clarifies that Open Skies F and D aircraft can be allowed to transit active SUA if the required LOA has been coordinated between the using agency and controlling agency. A reference to paragraph 9–3–4, Transiting Active SUA/ATCAA, has been added. To further clarify the requirements for Open Skies F and D aircraft that transit SUA, additional wording has been inserted that specifies an ATC facility must provide standard separation services for Open Skies F and D aircraft from activities in SUA at all times. This change does not alter any existing procedures. It just provides clarity and reinforcement.

n. 9–3–1. APPLICATION
9–3–2. SEPARATION MINIMA

This change modifies Chapter 9. Special Flights, Section 3, Special Use and ATC Assigned Airspace, by adding stationary ALTRVs that will now be allowed in airspace other than Oceanic and Offshore. This specific change integrates Stationary ALTRVs into paragraph 9–3–1. The original intent was to add a new paragraph to Chapter 9, but field suggestions were received that suggested the integration of stationary ALTRVs into the existing Section 3 since the same separation criteria would be used.

o. 11–1–1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY
11–1–2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES
11–1–3. TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)

This change incorporates the responsibilities of facilities, personnel, and areas that support the metering process. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.612, Traffic Management Advisor (TMA), effective January 30, 2013.

p. Additional editorial/format changes were made where necessary. Revision bars were not used because of the insignificant nature of these changes.

PAGE CONTROL CHART

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
Table of Contents i through xx	3/7/13	Table of Contents i through xx	8/22/13
1–2–3	2/9/12	1–2–3	2/9/12
1–2–4	2/9/12	1–2–4	8/22/13
2–1–1	2/9/12	2–1–1	2/9/12
2–1–2	2/9/12	2–1–2	8/22/13
2–1–3 and 2–1–4	3/7/13	2–1–3 and 2–1–4	8/22/13
2–1–5 through 2–1–12	2/9/12	2–1–5 through 2–1–12	8/22/13
2–1–13	3/7/13	2–1–13	8/22/13
2–2–1	2/9/12	2–2–1	8/22/13
2–2–2	2/9/12	2–2–2	2/9/12
2–3–9 and 2–3–10	2/9/12	2–3–9 and 2–3–10	8/22/13
2–4–9	2/9/12	2–4–9	8/22/13
2–4–10	2/9/12	2/4/10	2/9/12
2–6–1 through 2–6–5	2/9/12	2–6–1 through 2–6–5	8/22/13
3–7–1 through 3–7–4	2/9/12	3–7–1 through 3–7–4	8/22/13
3–9–9	2/9/12	3–9–9	2/9/12
3–9–10	2/9/12	3–9–10	8/22/13
3–10–1	2/9/12	3–10–1	8/22/13
3–10–2	7/26/12	3–10–2	8/22/13
3–10–3 through 3–10–9	2/9/12	3–10–3 through 3–10–9	8/22/13
3–10–10	2/9/12	3–10–10	2/9/12
4–3–5	2/9/12	4–3–5	2/9/12
4–3–6 and 4–3–7	2/9/12	4–3–6 and 4–3–7	8/22/13
4–8–1 through 4–8–7	2/9/12	4–8–1 through 4–8–8	8/22/13
5–4–1	2/9/12	5–4–1	2/9/12
5–4–2 through 5–4–6	2/9/12	5–4–2 through 5–4–6	8/22/13
5–5–1	2/9/12	5–5–1	2/9/12
5–5–2 through 5–5–6	3/7/13	5–5–2 through 5–5–6	8/22/13
8–10–1	2/9/12	8–10–1 and 8–10–2	8/22/13
9–1–1	2/9/12	9–1–1	8/22/13
9–2–3	3/7/13	9–2–3	3/7/13
9–2–4 through 9–2–11	2/9/12	9–2–4 through 9–2–11	8/22/13
9–3–1 and 9–3–2	2/9/12	9–3–1 and 9–3–2	8/22/13
10–1–1	2/9/12	10–1–1	8/22/13
10–1–2	2/9/12	10–1–1	2/9/12
10–2–1 and 10–2–2	7/26/12	10–2–1 and 10–2–2	8/22/13
10–2–3 through 10–2–7	2/9/12	10–2–3 through 10–2–7	8/22/13
11–1–1 and 11–1–2	2/9/12	11–1–1 and 11–1–2	8/22/13
13–2–1	2/9/12	13–2–1	8/22/13
13–2–2	7/26/12	13–2–2	7/26/12
PCG–1	3/7/13	PCG–1	8/22/13

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
PCG A–11	2/9/12	PCG A–11	2/9/12
PCG A–12 through A–16	2/9/12	PCG A–12 through A–16	8/22/13
PCG C–7 and C–8	2/9/12	PCG C–7 and C–8	8/22/13
PCG D–1	2/9/12	PCG D–1	2/9/12
PCG D–2 through D–4	2/9/12	PCG D–2 through D–4	8/22/13
PCG G–1 through G–3	3/7/13	PCG G–1 and G–2	8/22/13
PCG I–1	2/9/12	PCG I–1	2/9/12
PCG I–2 through I–5	2/9/12	PCG I–2 through I–5	8/22/13
PCG L–1	2/9/12	PCG L–1	2/9/12
PCG L–2 and L–3	2/9/12	PCG L–2 and L–3	8/22/13
PCG N–1	2/9/12	PCG N–1	2/9/12
PCG N–2	2/9/12	PCG N–2	8/22/13
PCG P–3 and P–4	2/9/12	PCG P–3 and P–4	8/22/13
PCG P–5	7/26/12	PCG P–5	8/22/13
PCG S–1	2/9/12	PCG S–1	2/9/12
PCG S–2	2/9/12	PCG S–2	8/22/13
PCG S–3	2/9/12	PCG S–3	2/9/12
PCG S–4 through S–8	2/9/12	PCG S–4 through S–8	8/22/13
PCG U–1	2/9/12	PCG U–1	8/22/13
PCG V–1 and V–2	2/9/12	PCG V–1 and V–2	8/22/13
Index I–1 through Index I–9	3/7/13	Index I–1 through Index I–9	8/22/13

Table of Contents

Chapter 1. General

Section 1. Introduction

Section 2. Terms of Reference

Chapter 2. General Control

Section 1. General

Section 2. Flight Plans and Control Information

Section 3. Flight Progress Strips

Section 4. Radio and Interphone Communications

Chapter 3. Airport Traffic Control–Terminal

Section 1. General

Section 2. Visual Signals

Section 3. Airport Conditions

Section 4. Airport Lighting

Section 3. Departure Procedures

Section 4. Route Assignment

Section 5. Altitude Assignment and Verification

Section 6. Holding Aircraft

Section 7. Arrival Procedures

Section 8. Approach Clearance Procedures

Chapter 5. Radar

Section 1. General

Section 2. Beacon Systems

Section 3. Radar Identification

Section 4. Transfer of Radar Identification

Section 5. Radar Separation

Section 11. Surveillance Approaches– Terminal

Section 12. PAR Approaches– Terminal

Section 13. Use of PAR for Approach Monitoring– Terminal

Section 14. Automation– En Route

Section 15. Automated Radar Terminal Systems (ARTS)– Terminal

Section 16. TPX–42– Terminal

Chapter 6. Nonradar

Section 1. General

Section 2. Initial Separation of Successive Departing Aircraft

Section 3. Initial Separation of Departing and Arriving Aircraft

Section 4. Longitudinal Separation

Section 5. Lateral Separation

Section 6. Vertical Separation

Section 7. Timed Approaches

Chapter 7. Visual

Section 1. General

Section 2. Visual Separation

Section 3. VFR-On-Top

Section 4. Approaches

Section 5. Special VFR (SVFR)

Section 6. Basic Radar Service to VFR Aircraft– Terminal

Section 7. Terminal Radar Service Area (TRSA)– Terminal

Section 8. Class C Service– Terminal

Section 9. Class B Service Area– Terminal

Chapter 8. Offshore/Oceanic Procedures

Section 1. General

Chapter 12. Canadian Airspace Procedures

Section 1. General Control

Chapter 13. Decision Support Tools

Section 1. User Request Evaluation Tool (URET) – En Route

Section 2. Ocean21 – Oceanic

Appendices

1–2–4. REFERENCES

As used in this order, references direct attention to an additional or supporting source of information such as FAA, NWS, and other agencies' orders, directives, notices, CFRs, and Advisory Circulars (ACs).

1–2–5. ANNOTATIONS

Revised, reprinted, or new pages are marked as follows:

a. The change number and the effective date are printed on each revised or additional page.

b. A page that does not require a change is reprinted in its original form.

c. Bold vertical lines in the margin of changed pages indicate the location of substantive revisions to the order. Bold vertical lines adjacent to the title of a chapter, section, or paragraph means that extensive changes have been made to that chapter, section, or paragraph.

d. Paragraphs/sections annotated with *EN ROUTE, OCEANIC,* or *TERMINAL* are only to be applied by the designated type facility. When they are not so designated, the paragraphs/sections apply to all types of facilities (en route, oceanic, and terminal).

e. The annotation, *USAF* for the U.S. Air Force, *USN* for the U.S. Navy, and *USA* for the U.S. Army denotes that the procedure immediately following the annotation applies only to the designated service.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–12, Military Procedures.

f. WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION inserted within a paragraph means that the remaining information in the paragraph requires the application of wake turbulence procedures.

g. The annotation ***PHRASEOLOGY*** denotes the prescribed words and/or phrases to be used in communications.

NOTE–
Controllers may, after first using the prescribed phraseology for a specific procedure, rephrase the message to ensure the content is understood. Good judgment must be exercised when using nonstandard phraseology.

h. The annotation ***EXAMPLE*** provides a sample of the way the prescribed phraseology associated with the preceding paragraph(s) will be used. If the preceding paragraph(s) does (do) not include specific prescribed phraseology, the ***EXAMPLE*** merely denotes suggested words and/or phrases that may be used in communications.

NOTE–
The use of the exact text contained in an example not preceded with specific prescribed phraseology is not mandatory. However, the words and/or phrases are expected, to the extent practical, to approximate those used in the example.

1–2–6. ABBREVIATIONS

As used in this manual, the following abbreviations have the meanings indicated. (See TBL 1–2–1.)

TBL 1–2–1
FAA Order JO 7110.65 Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning
AAR	Airport acceptance rate
AC	Advisory Circular
ACC	Area Control Center
ACD	ARTS Color Display
ACE–IDS . . .	ASOS Controller Equipment– Information Display System
ACL	Aircraft list
ACLS	Automatic Carrier Landing System
ADC	Aerospace Defense Command
ADIZ	Air Defense Identification Zone (to be pronounced "AY DIZ")
ADS	Automatic Dependent Surveillance
ADS–B	Automatic Dependent Surveillance Broadcast
ADS–C	Automatic Dependent Surveillance Contract
AFP	Airspace Flow Program
AIDC	ATS Interfacility Data Communications
AIM	Aeronautical Information Manual
AIRMET . . .	Airmen's meteorological information
ALERFA . . .	Alert phase code (Alerting Service)
ALNOT	Alert notice
ALS	Approach Light System
ALTRV	Altitude reservation
AMASS	Airport Movement Area Safety System

Abbreviation	Meaning
AMB	Ambiguity–A disparity greater than 2 miles exists between the position declared for a target by ATTS and another facility's computer declared position during interfacility handoff
AMVER	Automated Mutual Assistance Vessel Rescue System
ANG	Air National Guard
APR	ATC preferred route
APREQ	Approval Request
ARINC	Aeronautical Radio Incorporated
ARIP	Air refueling initial point
ARSR	Air route surveillance radar
ARTCC	Air Route Traffic Control Center
ARTS	Automated Radar Terminal System
ASD	Aircraft Situation Display
ASDE	Airport surface detection equipment
ASDE–X . . .	Airport Surface Detection Equipment System – Model X
ASF	Airport Stream Filters
ASOS	Automated Surface Observing System
ASR	Airport surveillance radar
ATC	Air traffic control
ATCAA	ATC assigned airspace
ATCSCC	David J. Hurley Air Traffic Control System Command Center
ATD	Along–Track Distance
ATIS	Automatic Terminal Information Service
ATO	Air Traffic Organization
ATO COO . .	Air Traffic Organization Chief Operating Officer
ATS	Air Traffic Service
AWOS	Automated Weather Observing System
BAASS	Bigelow Aerospace Advanced Space Studies
BASE	Cloud base
CA	Conflict Alert
CARCAH . . .	Chief, Aerial Reconnaissance Coordination, All Hurricanes
CARF	Central Altitude Reservation Function
CARTS	Common ARTS
CAT	Clear air turbulence
CDT	Controlled departure time
CENRAP . . .	Center Radar ARTS Presentation
CEP	Central East Pacific
CERAP	Combined Center/RAPCON

Abbreviation	Meaning
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CFR	Call for Release
CIC	Controller–in–Charge
CNS	Continuous
CPDLC	Controller Pilot Data Link Communications
CPME	Calibration Performance Monitor Equipment
CTA	Control Area
CTRD	Certified Tower Radar Display
CVFP	Charted Visual Flight Procedure
CWA	Center Weather Advisory
DARC	Direct Access Radar Channel
DETRESFA .	Distress Phase code (Alerting Service)
DH	Decision height
DL	Departure List
DME	Distance measuring equipment compatible with TACAN
DOE	Department of Energy
DP	Instrument Departure Procedure
DR	Dead reckoning
DRT	Diversion recovery tool
DSR	Display System Replacement
DTAS	Digital Terminal Automation Systems
DTM	Digital Terrain Map
DVFR	Defense Visual Flight Rules
DVRSN	Diversion
EA	Electronic Attack
EAS	En Route Automation System
EDCT	Expect Departure Clearance Time
EFC	Expect further clearance
ELP	Emergency Landing Pattern
ELT	Emergency locator transmitter
EOS	End Service
EOVM	Emergency obstruction video map
ERIDS	En Route Information Display System
ETA	Estimated time of arrival
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FAAO	FAA Order
FANS	Future Air Navigation System
FDIO	Flight Data Input/Output
FDP	Flight data processing
FIR	Flight Information Region

Chapter 2. General Control

Section 1. General

2–1–1. ATC SERVICE

The primary purpose of the ATC system is to prevent a collision between aircraft operating in the system and to organize and expedite the flow of traffic, and to provide support for National Security and Homeland Defense. In addition to its primary function, the ATC system has the capability to provide (with certain limitations) additional services. The ability to provide additional services is limited by many factors, such as the volume of traffic, frequency congestion, quality of radar, controller workload, higher priority duties, and the pure physical inability to scan and detect those situations that fall in this category. It is recognized that these services cannot be provided in cases in which the provision of services is precluded by the above factors. Consistent with the aforementioned conditions, controllers must provide additional service procedures to the extent permitted by higher priority duties and other circumstances. The provision of additional services is not optional on the part of the controller, but rather is required when the work situation permits. Provide air traffic control service in accordance with the procedures and minima in this order except when:

a. A deviation is necessary to conform with ICAO Documents, National Rules of the Air, or special agreements where the U.S. provides air traffic control service in airspace outside the U.S. and its possessions or:

NOTE–
Pilots are required to abide by CFRs or other applicable regulations regardless of the application of any procedure or minima in this order.

b. Other procedures/minima are prescribed in a letter of agreement, FAA directive, or a military document, or:

NOTE–
These procedures may include altitude reservations, air refueling, fighter interceptor operations, law enforcement, etc.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1–1–9, Procedural Letters of Agreement.

c. A deviation is necessary to assist an aircraft when an emergency has been declared.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–6, Safety Alert.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 10, Emergencies.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–1–8, Merging Target Procedures.

2–1–2. DUTY PRIORITY

a. Give first priority to separating aircraft and issuing safety alerts as required in this order. Good judgment must be used in prioritizing all other provisions of this order based on the requirements of the situation at hand.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–6, Safety Alert.

NOTE–
Because there are many variables involved, it is virtually impossible to develop a standard list of duty priorities that would apply uniformly to every conceivable situation. Each set of circumstances must be evaluated on its own merit, and when more than one action is required, controllers must exercise their best judgment based on the facts and circumstances known to them. That action which is most critical from a safety standpoint is performed first.

b. Provide support to national security and homeland defense activities to include, but not be limited to, reporting of suspicious and/or unusual aircraft/pilot activities.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4, Special Operations.

c. Provide additional services to the extent possible, contingent only upon higher priority duties and other factors including limitations of radar, volume of traffic, frequency congestion, and workload.

2–1–3. PROCEDURAL PREFERENCE

a. Use automation procedures in preference to nonautomation procedures when workload, communications, and equipment capabilities permit.

b. Use radar separation in preference to nonradar separation when it will be to an operational advantage and workload, communications, and equipment permit.

c. Use nonradar separation in preference to radar separation when the situation dictates that an operational advantage will be gained.

NOTE–
One situation may be where vertical separation would preclude excessive vectoring.

2–1–4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY

Provide air traffic control service to aircraft on a "first come, first served" basis as circumstances permit, except the following:

NOTE–
It is solely the pilot's prerogative to cancel an IFR flight plan. However, a pilot's retention of an IFR flight plan does not afford priority over VFR aircraft. For example, this does not preclude the requirement for the pilot of an arriving IFR aircraft to adjust his/her flight path, as necessary, to enter a traffic pattern in sequence with arriving VFR aircraft.

a. An aircraft in distress has the right of way over all other air traffic.

REFERENCE–
14 CFR Section 91.113(c).

b. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights (call sign "MEDEVAC"). Use of the MEDEVAC call sign indicates that operational priority is requested. When verbally requested, provide priority to AIR EVAC, HOSP, and scheduled air carrier/air taxi flights. Assist the pilots of MEDEVAC, AIR EVAC, and HOSP aircraft to avoid areas of significant weather and turbulent conditions. When requested by a pilot, provide notifications to expedite ground handling of patients, vital organs, or urgently needed medical materials.

NOTE–
It is recognized that heavy traffic flow may affect the controller's ability to provide priority handling. However, without compromising safety, good judgment must be used in each situation to facilitate the most expeditious movement of a MEDEVAC aircraft.

c. Provide maximum assistance to SAR aircraft performing a SAR mission.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–1–3, Providing Assistance.

d. Expedite the movement of presidential aircraft and entourage and any rescue support aircraft as well as related control messages when traffic conditions and communications facilities permit.

NOTE–
As used herein the terms presidential aircraft and entourage include aircraft and entourage of the President, Vice President, or other public figures when designated by the White House.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–4–20, Aircraft Identification.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–3–2, Departure Clearances.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5–1–1, Advance Coordination.

e. Provide special handling, as required to expedite Flight Check aircraft.

NOTE–
It is recognized that unexpected wind conditions, weather, or heavy traffic flows may affect controller's ability to provide priority or special handling at the specific time requested.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–1–3, Flight Check Aircraft.

f. Expedite movement of NIGHT WATCH aircraft when NAOC (pronounced NA–YOCK) is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ground communications.

NOTE–
The term "NAOC" will not be a part of the call sign but may be used when the aircraft is airborne to indicate a request for special handling.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 12–1–1, Applications.

g. Provide expeditious handling for any civil or military aircraft using the code name "FLYNET."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–6, FLYNET.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 12–4–1, "FLYNET" Flights, Nuclear Emergency Teams.

h. Provide expeditious handling of aircraft using the code name "Garden Plot" only when CARF notifies you that such priority is authorized. Refer any questions regarding flight procedures to CARF for resolution.

NOTE–
Garden Plot flights require priority movement and are coordinated by the military with CARF. State authority will contact the Regional Administrator to arrange for priority of National Guard troop movements within a particular state.

i. Provide special handling for USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions using the code name "SAMP."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–17, SAMP.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5–3–4, Atmosphere Sampling For Nuclear Contamination.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 12–4–3, Atmospheric Sampling For Nuclear Contamination.

j. Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense missions until the unknown aircraft is identified.

k. Expedite movement of Special Air Mission aircraft when SCOOT is indicated in the remarks section of the flight plan or in air/ground communications.

NOTE–
The term "SCOOT" will not be part of the call sign but may be used when the aircraft is airborne to indicate a request for special handling.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 12–7–1, Applications.

l. When requested, provide priority handling to TEAL and NOAA mission aircraft.

NOTE–
Priority handling may be requested by the pilot, or via telephone from CARCAH or the 53rd Weather Reconnaissance Squadron (53WRS) operations center personnel, or in the remarks section of the flight plan.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–19, Weather Reconnaissance Flights.

m. IFR aircraft must have priority over SVFR aircraft.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 7, Section 5, Special VFR (SVFR).

n. Providing priority and special handling to expedite the movement of OPEN SKIES observation and demonstration flights.

NOTE–
An OPEN SKIES aircraft has priority over all "regular" air traffic. "Regular" is defined as all aircraft traffic other than:

1. *Emergencies.*
2. *Aircraft directly involved in presidential movement.*
3. *Forces or activities in actual combat.*
4. *MEDEVAC, and active SAR missions.*
5. *AIR EVAC and HOSP aircraft that have requested priority handling.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–22, OPEN SKIES Treaty Aircraft.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5–3–7, OPEN SKIES Treaty Aircraft.
Treaty on OPEN SKIES, Treaty Document, 102–37.

o. Aircraft operating under the North American Route Program (NRP) and in airspace identified in the High Altitude Redesign (HAR) program, are not subject to route limiting restrictions (e.g., published preferred IFR routes, letter of agreement requirements, standard operating procedures).

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–3–2, En Route Data Entries.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–2–15, North American Route Program (NRP) Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–5, Route or Altitude Amendments.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 17, Section 16, North American Route Program.

p. If able, provide priority handling to diverted flights. Priority handling may be requested via use of "DVRSN" in the remarks section of the flight plan or by the flight being placed on the Diversion Recovery Tool (DRT).

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 17–4–5, Diversion Recovery.

2–1–5. EXPEDITIOUS COMPLIANCE

a. Use the word "immediately" only when expeditious compliance is required to avoid an imminent situation.

b. Use the word "expedite" only when prompt compliance is required to avoid the development of an imminent situation. If an "expedite" climb or descent clearance is issued by ATC, and subsequently the altitude to maintain is changed or restated without an expedite instruction, the expedite instruction is canceled.

c. In either case, if time permits, include the reason for this action.

2–1–6. SAFETY ALERT

Issue a safety alert to an aircraft if you are aware the aircraft is in a position/altitude that, in your judgment, places it in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft. Once the pilot informs you action is being taken to resolve the situation, you may discontinue the issuance of further alerts. Do not assume that because someone else has responsibility for the aircraft that the unsafe situation has been observed and the safety alert issued; inform the appropriate controller.

NOTE–
1. *The issuance of a safety alert is a first priority (see para 2–1–2, Duty Priority) once the controller observes and recognizes a situation of unsafe aircraft proximity to terrain, obstacles, or other aircraft. Conditions, such as workload, traffic volume, the quality/limitations of the radar system, and the available lead time to react are factors in determining whether it is reasonable for the controller to observe and recognize such situations. While a controller cannot see immediately the development of every situation where a safety alert must be issued, the*

controller must remain vigilant for such situations and issue a safety alert when the situation is recognized.

2. *Recognition of situations of unsafe proximity may result from MSAW/E−MSAW/LAAS, automatic altitude readouts, Conflict/Mode C Intruder Alert, observations on a PAR scope, or pilot reports.*

3. *Once the alert is issued, it is solely the pilot's prerogative to determine what course of action, if any, will be taken.*

a. Terrain/Obstruction Alert. Immediately issue/initiate an alert to an aircraft if you are aware the aircraft is at an altitude that, in your judgment, places it in unsafe proximity to terrain and/or obstructions. Issue the alert as follows:

PHRASEOLOGY−
LOW ALTITUDE ALERT (call sign),

CHECK YOUR ALTITUDE IMMEDIATELY.

and, if the aircraft is not yet on final approach,

THE (as appropriate) MEA/MVA/MOCA/MIA IN YOUR AREA IS (altitude),

REFERENCE−
P/CG Term − Final Approach − IFR

b. Aircraft Conflict/Mode C Intruder Alert. Immediately issue/initiate an alert to an aircraft if you are aware of another aircraft at an altitude that you believe places them in unsafe proximity. If feasible, offer the pilot an alternate course of action. When an alternate course of action is given, end the transmission with the word "immediately."

PHRASEOLOGY−
TRAFFIC ALERT (call sign) (position of aircraft) ADVISE YOU TURN LEFT/RIGHT (heading),

and/or

CLIMB/DESCEND (specific altitude if appropriate) IMMEDIATELY.

EXAMPLE−
"Traffic Alert, Cessna Three Four Juliet, advise you turn left immediately."

or

"Traffic Alert, Cessna Three−Four Juliet, advise you turn left and climb immediately."

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−14−1, Conflict Alert (CA) and Mode C Intruder (MCI) Alert.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−14−2, En Route Minimum Safe Altitude Warning (E−MSAW).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−15−6, CA/MCI.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−2−23, Altitude Filters.

2−1−7. INFLIGHT EQUIPMENT MALFUNCTIONS

a. When a pilot reports an inflight equipment malfunction, determine the nature and extent of any special handling desired.

NOTE−
Inflight equipment malfunctions include partial or complete failure of equipment, which may affect either safety, separation standards, and/or the ability of the flight to proceed under IFR, or in Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM) airspace, in the ATC system. Controllers may expect reports from pilots regarding VOR, TACAN, ADF, GPS, RVSM capability, or low frequency navigation receivers, impairment of air−ground communications capability, or other equipment deemed appropriate by the pilot (e.g., airborne weather radar). Pilots should communicate the nature and extent of any assistance desired from ATC.

b. Provide the maximum assistance possible consistent with equipment, workload, and any special handling requested.

c. Relay to other controllers or facilities who will subsequently handle the aircraft, all pertinent details concerning the aircraft and any special handling required or being provided.

2−1−8. MINIMUM FUEL

If an aircraft declares a state of "minimum fuel," inform any facility to whom control jurisdiction is transferred of the minimum fuel problem and be alert for any occurrence which might delay the aircraft en route.

NOTE−
Use of the term "minimum fuel" indicates recognition by a pilot that his/her fuel supply has reached a state where, upon reaching destination, he/she cannot accept any undue delay. This is not an emergency situation but merely an advisory that indicates an emergency situation is possible should any undue delay occur. A minimum fuel advisory does not imply a need for traffic priority. Common sense and good judgment will determine the extent of assistance to be given in minimum fuel situations. If, at any time, the remaining usable fuel supply suggests the need for traffic priority to ensure a safe landing, the pilot should declare an emergency and report fuel remaining in minutes.

2–1–9. REPORTING ESSENTIAL FLIGHT INFORMATION

Report as soon as possible to the appropriate FSS, airport manager's office, ARTCC, approach control facility, operations office, or military operations office any information concerning components of the NAS or any flight conditions which may have an adverse effect on air safety.

NOTE–
FSSs are responsible for classifying and disseminating Notices to Airmen.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–3–3, Timely Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–1–6, Service Limitations.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3–1–2, Periodic Maintenance.
USN, See OPNAVINST 3721.30.

2–1–10. NAVAID MALFUNCTIONS

a. When an aircraft reports a ground–based NAVAID malfunction, take the following actions:

1. Request a report from a second aircraft.

2. If the second aircraft reports normal operations, continue use and inform the first aircraft. Record the incident on FAA Form 7230–4 or appropriate military form.

3. If the second aircraft confirms the malfunction or in the absence of a second aircraft report, activate the standby equipment or request the monitor facility to activate.

4. If normal operation is reported after the standby equipment is activated, continue use, record the incident on FAA Form 7230–4 or appropriate military form, and notify technical operations personnel (the Systems Engineer of the ARTCC when an en route aid is involved).

5. If continued malfunction is reported after the standby equipment is activated or the standby equipment cannot be activated, inform technical operations personnel and request advice on whether or not the aid should be shut down. In the absence of a second aircraft report, advise the technical operations personnel of the time of the initial aircraft report and the estimated time a second aircraft report could be obtained.

b. When an aircraft reports a GPS anomaly, request the following information and/or take the following actions:

1. Record the following minimum information:

(a) Aircraft call sign and type.

(b) Location.

(c) Altitude.

(d) Date/time of occurrence.

2. Record the incident on FAA Form 7230–4 or appropriate military form.

3. Broadcast the anomaly report to other aircraft as necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT, GPS REPORTED UNRELIABLE IN VICINITY/AREA (position).

EXAMPLE–
"Attention all aircraft, GPS reported unreliable in the area 30 miles south of Waco VOR."

c. When an aircraft reports a Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) anomaly, request the following information and/or take the following actions:

1. Determine if the pilot has lost all WAAS service.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ARE YOU RECEIVING ANY WAAS SERVICE?

2. If the pilot reports receipt of any WAAS service, acknowledge the report and continue normal operations.

3. If the pilot reports loss of all WAAS service, report as a GPS anomaly using procedures in subpara 2–1–10b.

2–1–11. USE OF MARSA

a. MARSA may only be applied to military operations specified in a letter of agreement or other appropriate FAA or military document.

NOTE–
Application of MARSA is a military command prerogative. It will not be invoked indiscriminately by individual units or pilots. It will be used only for IFR operations requiring its use. Commands authorizing MARSA will ensure that its implementation and terms of use are documented and coordinated with the control agency having jurisdiction over the area in which the operations are conducted. Terms of use will assign responsibility and provide for separation among participating aircraft.

b. ATC facilities do not invoke or deny MARSA. Their sole responsibility concerning the use of MARSA is to provide separation between military aircraft engaged in MARSA operations and other nonparticipating IFR aircraft.

c. DOD must ensure that military pilots requesting special-use airspace/ATCAAs have coordinated with the scheduling agency, have obtained approval for entry, and are familiar with the appropriate MARSA procedures. ATC is not responsible for determining which military aircraft are authorized to enter special-use airspace/ATCAAs.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–13, Military Aerial Refueling.

2–1–12. MILITARY PROCEDURES

Military procedures in the form of additions, modifications, and exceptions to the basic FAA procedure are prescribed herein when a common procedure has not been attained or to fulfill a specific requirement. They must be applied by:

a. ATC facilities operated by that military service.

EXAMPLE–
1. *An Air Force facility providing service for an Air Force base would apply USAF procedures to all traffic regardless of class.*

2. *A Navy facility providing service for a Naval Air Station would apply USN procedures to all traffic regardless of class.*

b. ATC facilities, regardless of their parent organization (FAA, USAF, USN, USA), supporting a designated military airport exclusively. This designation determines which military procedures are to be applied.

EXAMPLE–
1. *An FAA facility supports a USAF base exclusively; USAF procedures are applied to all traffic at that base.*

2. *An FAA facility provides approach control service for a Naval Air Station as well as supporting a civil airport; basic FAA procedures are applied at both locations by the FAA facility.*

3. *A USAF facility supports a USAF base and provides approach control service to a satellite civilian airport; USAF procedures are applied at both locations by the USAF facility.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1–2–5, Annotations.

c. Other ATC facilities when specified in a letter of agreement.

EXAMPLE–
A USAF unit is using a civil airport supported by an FAA facility– USAF procedures will be applied as specified in a letter of agreement between the unit and the FAA facility to the aircraft of the USAF unit. Basic FAA procedures will be applied to all other aircraft.

2–1–13. FORMATION FLIGHTS

a. Control formation flights as a single aircraft. When individual control is requested, issue advisory information which will assist the pilots in attaining separation. When pilot reports indicate separation has been established, issue control instructions as required.

NOTE–
1. *Separation responsibility between aircraft within the formation during transition to individual control rests with the pilots concerned until standard separation has been attained.*

2. *Formation join-up and breakaway will be conducted in VFR weather conditions unless prior authorization has been obtained from ATC or individual control has been approved.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–5–8, Additional Separation for Formation Flights.
P/CG Term– Formation Flight.

b. Military and civil formation flights in RVSM airspace.

1. Utilize RVSM separation standards for a formation flight, which consists of all RVSM approved aircraft.

2. Utilize non–RVSM separation standards for a formation flight above FL 290, which does not consist of all RVSM approved aircraft.

3. If aircraft are requesting to form a formation flight to FL 290 or above, the controller who issues the clearance creating the formation flight is responsible for ensuring that the proper equipment suffix is entered for the lead aircraft.

4. If the flight departs as a formation, and is requesting FL 290 or above, the first center sector must ensure that the proper equipment suffix is entered.

5. If the formation flight is below FL 290 and later requests FL 290 or above, the controller receiving the RVSM altitude request must ensure the proper equipment suffix is entered.

6. Upon break–up of the formation flight, the controller initiating the break–up must ensure that all aircraft or flights are assigned their proper equipment suffix.

2–1–14. COORDINATE USE OF AIRSPACE

a. Ensure that the necessary coordination has been accomplished before you allow an aircraft under your control to enter another controller's area of jurisdiction.

b. Before you issue control instructions directly or relay through another source to an aircraft which is within another controller's area of jurisdiction that will change that aircraft's heading, route, speed, or altitude, ensure that coordination has been accomplished with each of the controllers listed below whose area of jurisdiction is affected by those instructions unless otherwise specified by a letter of agreement or a facility directive:

1. The controller within whose area of jurisdiction the control instructions will be issued.

2. The controller receiving the transfer of control.

3. Any intervening controller(s) through whose area of jurisdiction the aircraft will pass.

c. If you issue control instructions to an aircraft through a source other than another controller (e.g., ARINC, FSS, another pilot) ensure that the necessary coordination has been accomplished with any controllers listed in subparas b1, 2, and 3, whose area of jurisdiction is affected by those instructions unless otherwise specified by a letter of agreement or a facility directive.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–15, Control Transfer.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–5–10, Adjacent Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–5, Transferring Controller Handoff.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–6, Receiving Controller Handoff.

2–1–15. CONTROL TRANSFER

a. Transfer control of an aircraft in accordance with the following conditions:

1. At a prescribed or coordinated location, time, fix, or altitude; or,

2. At the time a radar handoff and frequency change to the receiving controller have been completed and when authorized by a facility directive or letter of agreement which specifies the type and extent of control that is transferred.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–14, Coordinate Use of Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–5, Transferring Controller Handoff.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–6, Receiving Controller Handoff.

b. Transfer control of an aircraft only after eliminating any potential conflict with other aircraft for which you have separation responsibility.

c. Assume control of an aircraft only after it is in your area of jurisdiction unless specifically coordinated or as specified by letter of agreement or a facility directive.

2–1–16. SURFACE AREAS

a. Coordinate with the appropriate nonapproach control tower on an individual aircraft basis before issuing a clearance which would require flight within a surface area for which the tower has responsibility unless otherwise specified in a letter of agreement.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4–3–1, Letters of Agreement.
14 CFR Section 91.127, Operating on or in the Vicinity of an Airport in Class E Airspace.
P/CG Term– Surface Area.

b. Coordinate with the appropriate control tower for transit authorization when you are providing radar traffic advisory service to an aircraft that will enter another facility's airspace.

NOTE–
The pilot is not expected to obtain his/her own authorization through each area when in contact with a radar facility.

c. Transfer communications to the appropriate facility, if required, prior to operation within a surface area for which the tower has responsibility.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–17, Radio Communications Transfer.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–1, Surface Area Restrictions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–6–1, Application.
14 CFR Section 91.129, Operations in Class D Airspace.

2–1–17. RADIO COMMUNICATIONS

a. Transfer radio communications before an aircraft enters the receiving controller's area of jurisdiction unless otherwise coordinated or specified by a letter of agreement or a facility directive.

b. Transfer radio communications by specifying the following:

NOTE–
Radio communications transfer procedures may be specified by a letter of agreement or contained in the route description of an MTR as published in the DOD Planning AP/1B (AP/3).

1. The facility name or location name and terminal function to be contacted. *TERMINAL:* Omit the location name when transferring communications to another controller within your facility; except when instructing the aircraft to change frequency for final approach guidance include the name of the facility.

2. Frequency to use except the following may be omitted:

(a) FSS frequency.

(b) Departure frequency if previously given or published on a SID chart for the procedure issued.

(c) *TERMINAL:*

(1) Ground or local control frequency if in your opinion the pilot knows which frequency is in use.

(2) The numbers preceding the decimal point if the ground control frequency is in the 121 MHz bandwidth.

EXAMPLE–
"Contact Tower."
"Contact Ground."
"Contact Ground Point Seven."
"Contact Ground, One Two Zero Point Eight."
"Contact Huntington Radio."
"Contact Departure."
"Contact Los Angeles Center, One Two Three Point Four."

3. Time, fix, altitude, or specifically when to contact a facility. You may omit this when compliance is expected upon receipt.

NOTE–
AIM, para 5–3–1, ARTCC Communications, informs pilots that they are expected to maintain a listening watch on the transferring controller's frequency until the time, fix, or altitude specified.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CONTACT (facility name or location name and terminal function), (frequency).

If required,

AT (time, fix, or altitude).

c. Controllers must, within a reasonable amount of time, take appropriate action to establish/restore communications with all aircraft for which a communications transfer or initial contact to his/her sector is expected/required.

NOTE–
For the purposes of this paragraph, a reasonable amount of time is considered to be 5 minutes from the time the aircraft enters the controller's area of jurisdiction or comes within range of radio/communications coverage. Communications include two–way VHF or UHF radio contact, data link, or high frequency (HF) radio through an approved third–party provider such as ARINC.

d. In situations where an operational advantage will be gained, and following coordination with the receiving controller, you may instruct aircraft on the ground to monitor the receiving controller's frequency.

EXAMPLE–
"Monitor Tower."
"Monitor Ground."
"Monitor Ground Point Seven."
"Monitor Ground, One Two Zero Point Eight."

e. In situations where a sector has multiple frequencies or when sectors are combined using multiple frequencies and the aircraft will remain under your jurisdiction, transfer radio communication by specifying the following:

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification) CHANGE TO MY FREQUENCY (state frequency).

EXAMPLE–
"United two twenty-two change to my frequency one two three point four."

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 4–2–3, Contact Procedures.

f. Avoid issuing a frequency change to helicopters known to be single-piloted during air-taxiing, hovering, or low-level flight. Whenever possible, relay necessary control instructions until the pilot is able to change frequency.

NOTE–
Most light helicopters are flown by one pilot and require the constant use of both hands and feet to maintain control. Although Flight Control Friction Devices assist the pilot, changing frequency near the ground could result in inadvertent ground contact and consequent loss of control. Pilots are expected to advise ATC of their single-pilot status if unable to comply with a frequency change.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 4–3–14, Communications.

g. In situations where the controller does not want the pilot to change frequency but the pilot is expecting or may want a frequency change, use the following phraseology.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REMAIN THIS FREQUENCY.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–7–1 Clearance Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–12–9 Communication Transfer.

2–1–18. OPERATIONAL REQUESTS

Respond to a request from another controller, a pilot or vehicle operator by one of the following verbal means:

a. Restate the request in complete or abbreviated terms followed by the word "APPROVED." The phraseology "APPROVED AS REQUESTED" may be substituted in lieu of a lengthy readback.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Requested operation) APPROVED.

or

APPROVED AS REQUESTED.

b. State restrictions followed by the word "APPROVED."

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Restriction and/or additional instructions, requested operation) APPROVED.

c. State the word "UNABLE" and, time permitting, a reason.

PHRASEOLOGY–
UNABLE (requested operation).

and when necessary,

(reason and/or additional instructions.)

d. State the words "STAND BY."

NOTE–
"STAND BY" is not an approval or denial. The controller acknowledges the request and will respond at a later time.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–21 Traffic Advisories.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–5 Route or Altitude Amendments.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–9–3 Methods.

2–1–19. WAKE TURBULENCE

a. Apply wake turbulence procedures to aircraft operating behind heavy jets/B757s and, where indicated, to small aircraft behind large aircraft.

NOTE–
Para 5–5–4 Minima, specifies increased radar separation for small type aircraft landing behind large, heavy, or B757 aircraft because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

b. The separation minima must continue to touchdown for all IFR aircraft not making a visual approach or maintaining visual separation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–5 Approach Separation Responsibility.

2–1–20. WAKE TURBULENCE CAUTIONARY ADVISORIES

a. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories and the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jet or B757 to:

REFERENCE–
AC 90–23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Pilot Responsibility, Para 12.

1. *TERMINAL.* VFR aircraft not being radar vectored but are behind heavy jets or B757s.

2. IFR aircraft that accept a visual approach or visual separation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–1 Visual Approach.

3. *TERMINAL.* VFR arriving aircraft that have previously been radar vectored and the vectoring has been discontinued.

b. Issue cautionary information to any aircraft if in your opinion, wake turbulence may have an adverse effect on it. When traffic is known to be a heavy aircraft, include the word *heavy* in the description.

NOTE–
Wake turbulence may be encountered by aircraft in flight as well as when operating on the airport movement area. Because wake turbulence is unpredictable, the controller is not responsible for anticipating its existence or effect. Although not mandatory during ground operations, controllers may use the words jet blast, propwash, or rotorwash, in lieu of wake turbulence, when issuing a caution advisory.

REFERENCE–
AC 90–23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence.
P/CG Term– Aircraft Classes.
P/CG Term– Wake Turbulence.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CAUTION WAKE TURBULENCE (traffic information).

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–2–1, Visual Separation.

2–1–21. TRAFFIC ADVISORIES

Unless an aircraft is operating within Class A airspace or omission is requested by the pilot, issue traffic advisories to all aircraft (IFR or VFR) on your frequency when, in your judgment, their proximity may diminish to less than the applicable separation minima. Where no separation minima applies, such as for VFR aircraft outside of Class B/Class C airspace, or a TRSA, issue traffic advisories to those aircraft on your frequency when in your judgment their proximity warrants it. Provide this service as follows:

a. To radar identified aircraft:

1. Azimuth from aircraft in terms of the 12–hour clock, or

2. When rapidly maneuvering aircraft prevent accurate issuance of traffic as in 1 above, specify the direction from an aircraft's position in terms of the eight cardinal compass points (N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W, and NW). This method must be terminated at the pilot's request.

3. Distance from aircraft in miles.

4. Direction in which traffic is proceeding and/or relative movement of traffic.

NOTE–
Relative movement includes closing, converging, parallel same direction, opposite direction, diverging, overtaking, crossing left to right, crossing right to left.

5. If known, type of aircraft and altitude.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–4–21, Description of Aircraft Types.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC, (number) O'CLOCK,

or when appropriate,

(direction) (number) MILES, (direction)–BOUND and/or (relative movement),

and if known,

(type of aircraft and altitude).

or

When appropriate,

(type of aircraft and relative position), (number of feet) FEET ABOVE/BELOW YOU.

If altitude is unknown,

ALTITUDE UNKNOWN.

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, eleven o'clock, one zero miles, southbound, converging, Boeing Seven Twenty Seven, one seven thousand."
"Traffic, twelve o'clock, one five miles, opposite direction, altitude unknown."
"Traffic, ten o'clock, one two miles, southeast bound, one thousand feet below you."

6. When requested by the pilot, issue radar vectors to assist in avoiding the traffic, provided the aircraft to be vectored is within your area of jurisdiction or coordination has been effected with the sector/facility in whose area the aircraft is operating.

7. If unable to provide vector service, inform the pilot.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–18, Operational Requests.

8. Inform the pilot of the following when traffic you have issued is not reported in sight:

(a) The traffic is no factor.

(b) The traffic is no longer depicted on radar.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC NO FACTOR/NO LONGER OBSERVED,

or

(number) O'CLOCK TRAFFIC NO FACTOR/NO LONGER OBSERVED,

or

(direction) TRAFFIC NO FACTOR/NO LONGER OBSERVED.

b. To aircraft that are not radar identified:

1. Distance and direction from fix.

2. Direction in which traffic is proceeding.

3. If known, type of aircraft and altitude.

4. ETA over the fix the aircraft is approaching, if appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TRAFFIC, (number) MILES/MINUTES (direction) OF (airport or fix), (direction)–BOUND,

and if known,

(type of aircraft and altitude),

ESTIMATED (fix) (time),

or

TRAFFIC, NUMEROUS AIRCRAFT VICINITY (location).

If altitude is unknown,

ALTITUDE UNKNOWN.

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, one zero miles east of Forsythe V–O–R, Southbound, M–D Eighty, descending to one six thousand."
"Traffic, reported one zero miles west of Downey V–O–R, northbound, Apache, altitude unknown, estimated Joliet V–O–R one three one five."
"Traffic, eight minutes west of Chicago Heights V–O–R, westbound, Mooney, eight thousand, estimated Joliet V–O–R two zero three five."
"Traffic, numerous aircraft, vicinity of Delia airport."

c. For aircraft displaying Mode C, not radar identified, issue indicated altitude.

EXAMPLE–
"Traffic, one o'clock, six miles, eastbound, altitude indicates six thousand five hundred."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–6, Traffic Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–2–1, Visual Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–6–10, VFR Departure Information.

2–1–22. BIRD ACTIVITY INFORMATION

a. Issue advisory information on pilot-reported, tower-observed, or radar-observed and pilot-verified bird activity. Include position, species or size of birds, if known, course of flight, and altitude. Do this for at least 15 minutes after receipt of such information from pilots or from adjacent facilities unless visual observation or subsequent reports reveal the activity is no longer a factor.

EXAMPLE–
"Flock of geese, one o'clock, seven miles, northbound, last reported at four thousand."
"Flock of small birds, southbound along Mohawk River, last reported at three thousand."
"Numerous flocks of ducks, vicinity Lake Winnebago, altitude unknown."

b. Relay bird activity information to adjacent facilities and to FSSs whenever it appears it will become a factor in their areas.

2–1–23. TRANSFER OF POSITION RESPONSIBILITY

The transfer of position responsibility must be accomplished in accordance with the "Standard Operating Practice (SOP) for the Transfer of Position Responsibility," and appropriate facility directives each time operational responsibility for a position is transferred from one specialist to another.

2–1–24. WHEELS DOWN CHECK

USA/USAF/USN

Remind aircraft to check wheels down on each approach unless the pilot has previously reported wheels down for that approach.

NOTE–
The intent is solely to remind the pilot to lower the wheels, not to place responsibility on the controller.

a. Tower must issue the wheels down check at an appropriate place in the pattern.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CHECK WHEELS DOWN.

b. Approach/arrival control, GCA must issue the wheels down check as follows:

1. To aircraft conducting ASR, PAR, or radar monitored approaches, before the aircraft starts descent on final approach.

2. To aircraft conducting instrument approaches and remaining on the radar facility's frequency, before the aircraft passes the outer marker/final approach fix.

PHRASEOLOGY–
WHEELS SHOULD BE DOWN.

2–1–25. SUPERVISORY NOTIFICATION

Ensure supervisor/controller-in-charge (CIC) is aware of conditions which impact sector/position operations including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Weather.

b. Equipment status.

c. Potential sector overload.

d. Emergency situations.

e. Special flights/operations.

f. Possible suspicious aircraft/pilot activity as prescribed in FAA Order JO 7610.4, paragraph 7–3–1.

2–1–26. PILOT DEVIATION NOTIFICATION

When it appears that the actions of a pilot constitute a pilot deviation, notify the pilot, workload permitting.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Identification) POSSIBLE PILOT DEVIATION ADVISE YOU CONTACT (facility) AT (telephone number).

REFERENCE–
FAAO 8020.11, Aircraft Accident and Incident Notification, Investigation, and Reporting, Para 84, Pilot Deviations.

2–1–27. TCAS RESOLUTION ADVISORIES

a. When an aircraft under your control jurisdiction informs you that it is responding to a TCAS Resolution Advisory (RA), do not issue control instructions that are contrary to the RA procedure that a crew member has advised you that they are executing. Provide safety alerts regarding terrain or obstructions and traffic advisories for the aircraft responding to the RA and all other aircraft under your control jurisdiction, as appropriate.

b. Unless advised by other aircraft that they are also responding to a TCAS RA, do not assume that other aircraft in the proximity of the responding aircraft are involved in the RA maneuver or are aware of the responding aircraft's intended maneuvers. Continue to provide control instructions, safety alerts, and traffic advisories as appropriate to such aircraft.

c. Once the responding aircraft has begun a maneuver in response to an RA, the controller is not responsible for providing standard separation between the aircraft that is responding to an RA and any other aircraft, airspace, terrain or obstructions. Responsibility for standard separation resumes when one of the following conditions are met:

1. The responding aircraft has returned to its assigned altitude, or

2. A crew member informs you that the TCAS maneuver is completed and you observe that standard separation has been reestablished, or

3. The responding aircraft has executed an alternate clearance and you observe that standard separation has been reestablished.

NOTE–
1. *AC 120–55A, Air Carrier Operational Approval and Use of TCAS II, suggests pilots use the following phraseology to notify controllers during TCAS events. When a TCAS RA may affect an ATC clearance, inform ATC when beginning the maneuver, or as soon as workload permits.*

EXAMPLE–
1. *"New York Center, United 321, TCAS climb."*

NOTE–
2. *When the RA has been resolved, the flight crew should advise ATC they are returning to their previously assigned clearance or subsequent amended clearance.*

EXAMPLE–
2. *"New York Center, United 321, clear of conflict, returning to assigned altitude."*

2–1–28. RVSM OPERATIONS

Controller responsibilities must include but not be limited to the following:

a. Non–RVSM aircraft operating in RVSM airspace.

1. Ensure non-RVSM aircraft are not permitted in RVSM airspace unless they meet the criteria of excepted aircraft and are previously approved by the operations supervisor/CIC. The following aircraft are excepted: DOD, DOD-certified aircraft operated by NASA (T38, F15, F18, WB57, S3, and U2 aircraft only), MEDEVAC, manufacturer aircraft being flown for development/certification, and Foreign State aircraft. These exceptions are accommodated on a workload or traffic-permitting basis.

NOTE–
The operations supervisor/CIC is responsible for system acceptance of a non–RVSM aircraft beyond the initial sector–to–sectorcoordination following the pilot request to access the airspace. Operations supervisor/CIC responsibilities are defined in FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 6, Section 9, Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM).

2. Ensure sector–to–sector coordination for all non–RVSM aircraft operations within RVSM airspace.

3. Inform the operational supervisor/CIC when a non–RVSM exception flight is denied clearance

into RVSM airspace or is removed from RVSM airspace.

b. Non–RVSM aircraft transitioning RVSM airspace.

Ensure that operations supervisors/CICs are made aware when non–RVSM aircraft are transitioning through RVSM airspace.

c. Apply appropriate separation standards and remove any aircraft from RVSM airspace that advises it is unable RVSM due to equipment while en route.

d. Use "negative RVSM" in all verbal ground–to–ground communications involving non–RVSM aircraft while cleared to operate within RVSM airspace.

EXAMPLE–
"Point out Baxter21 climbing to FL 360, negative RVSM."

e. For the following situations, use the associated phraseology:

1. To deny clearance into RVSM airspace.

PHRASEOLOGY–
"UNABLE CLEARANCE INTO RVSM AIRSPACE."

2. To request a pilot to report when able to resume RVSM.

PHRASEOLOGY–
"REPORT ABLE TO RESUME RVSM."

f. In the event of a change to an aircraft's navigational capability amend the equipment suffix in order to properly identify non–RVSM aircraft on the controller display.

2–1–29. TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (TAWS) ALERTS

a. When an aircraft under your control jurisdiction informs you that it is responding to a TAWS (or other on–board low altitude) alert, do not issue control instructions that are contrary to the TAWS procedure that a crew member has advised you that they are executing. Provide safety alerts regarding terrain or obstructions and traffic advisories for the aircraft responding to the TAWS alert and all other aircraft under your control jurisdiction, as appropriate.

b. Once the responding aircraft has begun a maneuver in response to TAWS alert, the controller is not responsible for providing standard separation between the aircraft that is responding to a TAWS alert and any other aircraft, airspace, terrain or obstructions. Responsibility for standard separation resumes when one of the following conditions are met:

1. The responding aircraft has returned to its assigned altitude, or

2. A crew member informs you that the TAWS maneuver is completed and you observe that standard separation has been reestablished, or

3. The responding aircraft has executed an alternate clearance and you observe that standard separation has been reestablished.

2–1–30. "BLUE LIGHTNING" EVENTS

Ensure that the supervisor/controller–in–charge (CIC) is notified of reports of possible human trafficking. These may be referred to as "Blue Lightning" events.

Section 2. Flight Plans and Control Information

2–2–1. RECORDING INFORMATION

a. Record flight plan information required by the type of flight plan and existing circumstances. Use authorized abbreviations when possible.

NOTE–
Generally, all military overseas flights are required to clear through a specified military base operations office (BASOPS). Pilots normally will not file flight plans directly with an FAA facility unless a BASOPS is not available. BASOPS will, in turn, forward the IFR flight notification message to the appropriate center.

b. *EN ROUTE.* When flight plans are filed directly with the center, record all items given by the pilot either on a flight progress strip/flight data entry or on a voice recorder. If the latter, enter in box 26 of the initial flight progress strip the sector or position number to identify where the information may be found in the event search and rescue (SAR) activities become necessary.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–3–2, En Route Data Entries.

2–2–2. FORWARDING INFORMATION

a. Except during EAS FDP operation, forward the flight plan information to the appropriate ATC facility, FSS, or BASOPS and record the time of filing and delivery on the form.

b. *EN ROUTE.* During EAS FDP operation, the above manual actions are required in cases where the data is not forwarded automatically by the computer.

NOTE–
During EAS FDP operation, data is exchanged between interfaced automated facilities and both the data and time of transmission are recorded automatically.

c. *EN ROUTE.* Forward proposed tower en route flight plans and any related amendments to the appropriate departure terminal facility.

2–2–3. FORWARDING VFR DATA

TERMINAL

Forward aircraft departure times to FSSs or military operations offices when they have requested them. Forward other VFR flight plan data only if requested by the pilot.

2–2–4. MILITARY DVFR DEPARTURES

TERMINAL

Forward departure times on all DVFR departures from joint-use airports to the military operations office.

NOTE–
1. *Details for handling air carrier and nonscheduled civil DVFR flight data are contained in FAA Order JO 7610.4, Special Operations.*

2. *Civil pilots departing DVFR from a joint-use airport will include the phrase "DVFR to (destination)" in their initial call-up to an FAA-operated tower.*

2–2–5. IFR TO VFR FLIGHT PLAN CHANGE

Request a pilot to contact the appropriate FSS if the pilot informs you of a desire to change from an IFR to a VFR flight plan.

2–2–6. IFR FLIGHT PROGRESS DATA

Forward control information from controller to controller within a facility, then to the receiving facility as the aircraft progresses along its route. Where appropriate, use computer equipment in lieu of manual coordination procedures. Do not use the remarks section of flight progress strips in lieu of voice coordination to pass control information. Ensure that flight plan and control information is correct and up-to-date. When covered by a letter of agreement/facility directive, the time requirements of subpara a may be reduced, and the time requirements of subpara b1 and para 2–2–11, Forwarding Amended and UTM Data, subpara a may be increased up to 15 minutes when facilitated by automated systems or mandatory radar handoffs; or if operationally necessary because of manual data processing or nonradar operations, the time requirements of subpara a may be increased.

NOTE–
1. *The procedures for preparing flight plan and control information related to altitude reservations (ALTRVs) are contained in FAAO JO 7210.3, para 8–1–2, Facility Operation and Administration, ALTRV Flight Data Processing. Development of the methods for assuring the accuracy and completeness of ALTRV flight plan and control information is the responsibility of the military liaison and security officer.*

2. *The term facility in this paragraph refers to centers and terminal facilities when operating in an en route capacity.*

a. Forward the following information at least 15 minutes before the aircraft is estimated to enter the receiving facility's area:

1. Aircraft identification.

2. Number of aircraft if more than one, heavy aircraft indicator "H/" if appropriate, type of aircraft, and aircraft equipment suffix.

3. Assigned altitude and ETA over last reporting point/fix in transferring facility's area or assumed departure time when the departure point is the last point/fix in the transferring facility's area.

4. Altitude at which aircraft will enter the receiving facility's area if other than the assigned altitude.

5. True airspeed.

6. Point of departure.

7. Route of flight remaining.

8. Destination airport and clearance limit if other than destination airport.

9. ETA at destination airport (not required for military or scheduled air carrier aircraft).

10. Altitude requested by the aircraft if assigned altitude differs from requested altitude (within a facility only).

NOTE–
When an aircraft has crossed one facility's area and assignment at a different altitude is still desired, the pilot will reinitiate the request with the next facility.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–5–8 Anticipated Altitude Changes.

11. When flight plan data must be forwarded manually and an aircraft has been assigned a beacon code by the computer, include the code as part of the flight plan.

NOTE–
When an IFR aircraft, or a VFR aircraft that has been assigned a beacon code by the EAS and whose flight plan will terminate in another facility's area, cancels ATC service or does not activate the flight plan, send a remove strips (RS) message on that aircraft via the EAS keyboard, the FDIO keyboard or call via service F.

12. Longitudinal separation being used between aircraft at the same altitude if it results in these aircraft having less than 10 minutes separation at the facilities' boundary.

13. Any additional nonroutine operational information pertinent to flight safety.

NOTE–
EN ROUTE. This includes alerting the receiving controller that the flight is conducting celestial navigation training.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–2 Celestial Navigation Training.

b. Forward position report over last reporting point in the transferring facility's area if any of the following conditions exist:

1. Time differs more than 3 minutes from estimate given.

2. Requested by receiving facility.

3. Agreed to between facilities.

2–2–7. MANUAL INPUT OF COMPUTER-ASSIGNED BEACON CODES

When a flight plan is manually entered into the computer and a computer-assigned beacon code has been forwarded with the flight plan data, insert the beacon code in the appropriate field as part of the input message.

2–2–8. ALTRV INFORMATION

EN ROUTE

When an aircraft is a part of an approved ALTRV, forward only those items necessary to properly identify the flight, update flight data contained in the ALTRV APVL, or revise previously given information.

2–2–9. COMPUTER MESSAGE VERIFICATION

EN ROUTE

Unless your facility is equipped to automatically obtain acknowledgment of receipt of transferred data, when you transfer control information by computer message, obtain, via Service F, acknowledgment that the receiving center has received the message and verification of the following:

d. Air traffic managers at automated terminal radar facilities may waive the requirement to use flight progress strips provided:

1. Backup systems such as multiple radar sites/systems or single site radars with CENRAP are utilized.

2. Local procedures are documented in a facility directive. These procedures should include but not be limited to:

(a) Departure areas and/or procedures.

(b) Arrival procedures.

(c) Overflight handling procedures.

(d) Transition from radar to nonradar.

(e) Transition from ARTS to non−ARTS.

(f) Transition from ASR to CENRAP.

(g) Transition to or from ESL.

3. No misunderstanding will occur as a result of no strip usage.

4. Unused flight progress strips, facility developed forms and/or blank notepads shall be provided for controller use.

5. Facilities shall revert to flight progress strip usage if backup systems referred to in subpara d1 are not available.

e. Air traffic managers at FDIO locations may authorize reduced lateral spacing between fields so as to print all FDIO data to the left of the strip perforation. When using FAA Form 7230−7.2, all items will retain the same relationship to each other as they do when the full length strip (FAA Form 7230−7.1) is used.

2−3−5. AIRCRAFT IDENTITY

Indicate aircraft identity by one of the following using combinations not to exceed seven alphanumeric characters:

a. ivil aircraft, including the air-carrier letter-digit registration number which can include the letter "T" for air taxi, the letter "L" for MEDEVAC, or the 3-letter company designator specified in FAA Order JO 7340.2, Contractions, followed by the trip or flight number. Use the operating air carrier's company name in identifying equipment interchange flights.

EXAMPLE−
"N12345."
"TN5552Q."
"AAl192."
"LN751B."

NOTE−
The letter "L" is not to be used for air carrier/air taxi MEDEVAC *aircraft.*

b. Military Aircraft.

1. Prefixes indicating branch of service and/or type of mission followed by the last 5 digits of the serial number (the last 4 digits for CFC and CTG). (See TBL 2−3−6 and TBL 2−3−7.)

2. Pronounceable words of 3, 4, 5, and 6 letters followed by a 4−, 3−, 2−, or 1−digit number.

EXAMPLE−
"SAMP Three One Six."

3. Assigned double-letter 2−digit flight number.

4. Navy or Marine fleet and training command aircraft, one of the following:

(a) The service prefix and 2 letters (use phonetic alphabet equivalent) followed by 2 or 3 digits.

TBL 2−3−6
Branch of Service Prefix

Prefix	Branch
A	U.S. Air Force
C	U.S. Coast Guard
G	Air or Army National Guard
R	U.S. Army
VM	U.S. Marine Corps
VV	U.S. Navy
CFC	Canadian Forces
CTG	Canadian Coast Guard

TBL 2−3−7
Military Mission Prefix

Prefix	Mission
E	Medical Air Evacuation
F	Flight Check
L	LOGAIR (USAF Contract)
RCH	AMC (Air Mobility Command)
S	Special Air Mission

(b) The service prefix and a digit and a letter (use phonetic alphabet equivalent) followed by 2 or 3 digits.

5. Aircraft carrying the President, Vice President, and/or their family members will use the identifiers in the following tables. See TBL 2–3–8 and TBL 2–3–9.

TBL 2–3–8
President and Family

Service	President	Family
Air Force	AF1	EXEC1F
Marine	VM1	EXEC1F
Navy	VV1	EXEC1F
Army	RR1	EXEC1F
Coast Guard	C1	EXEC1F
Guard	G1	EXEC1F
Commercial	EXEC1	EXEC1F

TBL 2–3–9
Vice President and Family

Service	Vice President	Family
Air Force	AF2	EXEC2F
Marine	VM2	EXEC2F
Navy	VV2	EXEC2F
Army	RR2	EXEC2F
Coast Guard	C2	EXEC2F
Guard	G2	EXEC2F
Commercial	EXEC2	EXEC2F

c. Special-use. Approved special-use identifiers.

2–3–6. AIRCRAFT TYPE

Use the approved codes listed in Appendix A through Appendix C to indicate aircraft type.

2–3–7. USAF/USN UNDERGRADUATE PILOTS

To identify aircraft piloted by solo USAF/USN undergraduate student pilots (who may occasionally request revised clearances because they normally are restricted to flight in VFR conditions), the aircraft identification in the flight plan shall include the letter "Z" as a suffix. Do not use this suffix, however, in ground-to-air communication.

NOTE–
USAF solo students who have passed an instrument certification check may penetrate cloud layers in climb or descent only. Requests for revised clearances to avoid clouds in level flight can still be expected. This does not change the requirement to use the letter "Z" as a suffix to the aircraft identification.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–4–20 Aircraft Identification.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 12, Section 10, USAF Undergraduate Flying Training (UFT)/Pilot Instructor Training (PIT)/Introduction To Fighter Fundamentals.

2–3–8. AIRCRAFT EQUIPMENT SUFFIX

a. Indicate, for both VFR and IFR operations, the aircraft's radar transponder, DME, or navigation capability by adding the appropriate symbol, preceded by a slant. (See TBL 2–3–10.)

b. When forwarding this information, state the aircraft type followed by the word "slant" and the appropriate phonetic letter equivalent of the suffix.

EXAMPLE–
"Cessna Three–ten slant Tango."
"A–Ten slant November."
"F–Sixteen slant Papa."
"Seven–sixty–seven slant Golf."

c. Utilize aircraft equipment suffix /H to indicate "RVSM–capable, no transponder."

NOTE–
/H is for ATC use only. Users are not authorized to file this suffix.

2–3–9. CLEARANCE STATUS

Use an appropriate clearance symbol followed by a dash (–) and other pertinent information to clearly show the clearance status of an aircraft. To indicate delay status use:

a. The symbol "H" at the clearance limit when holding instructions have been included in the aircraft's original clearance. Show detailed holding information following the dash when holding differs from the established pattern for the fix; i.e., turns, leg lengths, etc.

b. The symbols "F" or "O" to indicate the clearance limit when a delay is not anticipated.

EXAMPLE–
"American Fifty–Two."
"Delta One Hundred."
"Eastern Metro One Ten."
"General Motors Thirty Fifteen."
"United One Zero One."
"Delta Zero One Zero."
"TWA Ten Zero Four."

NOTE–
Air carrier and other civil aircraft having FAA authorized call signs may be pronounced using single digits if necessary for clarity.

EXAMPLE–
"United Five One Seven."
"United Five Seven Zero."

3. Air taxi and commercial operators not having FAA authorized call signs. State the prefix "TANGO" on initial contact, if used by the pilot, followed by the registration number. The prefix may be dropped in subsequent communications.

EXAMPLE–
"Tango Mooney Five Five Five Two Quebec."
"Tango November One Two Three Four."

4. Air carrier/taxi ambulance. State the prefix "MEDEVAC" if used by the pilot, followed by the call sign and flight number in group form.

EXAMPLE–
"MEDEVAC Delta Fifty-One."

5. Civilian air ambulance. State the word *"MEDEVAC"* followed by the numbers/letters of the registration number.

EXAMPLE–
"MEDEVAC Two Six Four Six."

6. U.S. military. State one of the following:

(a) The service name, followed by the word "copter," when appropriate, and the last 5 digits of the serial number.

EXAMPLE–
"Navy Five Six Seven One Three."
"Coast Guard Six One Three Two Seven."
"Air Guard One Three Five Eight Six."
"Army Copter Three Two One Seven Six."

NOTE–
If aircraft identification becomes a problem, the procedures reflected in FAAO JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, para 2–1–13, Aircraft Identification Problems, will apply.

(b) Special military operations. State one of the following followed by the last 5 digits of the serial number:

(c) Air evacuation flights. "AIR EVAC," "MARINE AIR EVAC," or "NAVY AIR EVAC."

EXAMPLE–
"Air Evac One Seven Six Five Two."

(d) Rescue flights. (Service name) "RESCUE."

EXAMPLE–
"Air Force Rescue Six One Five Seven Niner."

(e) Air Mobility Command. "REACH."

EXAMPLE–
"Reach Seven Eight Five Six Two."

(f) Special Air Mission. "SAM."

EXAMPLE–
"Sam Niner One Five Six Two."

(g) USAF Contract Aircraft "LOGAIR."

EXAMPLE–
"Logair Seven Five Eight Two Six."

(h) Military tactical and training:

(1) U.S. Air Force, Air National Guard, Military District of Washington priority aircraft, and USAF civil disturbance aircraft. Pronounceable words of 3 to 6 letters followed by a 1 to 5 digit number.

EXAMPLE–
"Paul Two Zero."
"Pat One Five Seven."
"Gaydog Four."

NOTE–
When the "Z" suffix described in para 2–3–7 USAF/USN Undergraduate Pilots, is added to identify aircraft piloted by USAF undergraduate pilots, the call sign will be limited to a combination of six characters.

(2) Navy or Marine fleet and training command aircraft. The service name and 2 letters, or a digit and a letter (use letter phonetic equivalents), followed by 2 or 3 digits.

EXAMPLE–
"Navy Golf Alfa Two One."
"Marine Four Charlie Two Three Six."

7. Presidential aircraft and Presidential family aircraft:

(a) When the President is aboard a military aircraft, state the name of the military service, followed by the word "One."

EXAMPLE–
"Air Force One."
"Army One."
"Marine One."

(b) When the President is aboard a civil aircraft, state the words "Executive One."

(c) When a member of the President's family is aboard any aircraft, if the U.S. Secret Service or the White House Staff determines it is necessary, state the words "Executive One Foxtrot."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–4 Operational Priority.

8. Vice Presidential aircraft:

(a) When the Vice President is aboard a military aircraft, state the name of the military service, followed by the word "Two."

EXAMPLE–
"Air Force Two."
"Army Two."
"Marine Two."

(b) When the Vice President is aboard a civil aircraft, state the words "Executive Two."

(c) When a member of the Vice President's family is aboard any aircraft, if the U.S. Secret Service or the White House Staff determines it is necessary, state the words "Executive Two Foxtrot."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–4 Operational Priority.

9. DOT and FAA flights. The following alphanumeric identifiers and radio/interphone call signs are established for use in air/ground communications when the Secretary of Transportation, Deputy Secretary of Transportation, FAA Administrator or FAA Deputy Administrator have a requirement to identify themselves. (See TBL 2–4–2.)

TBL 2–4–2
DOT and FAA Alphanumeric Identifiers and Call Signs

Official	Identifier	Call Sign
Secretary of Transportation	DOT–1	Transport–1
Deputy Secretary of Transportation	DOT–2	Transport–2
Administrator, Federal Aviation Administration	FAA–1	Safeair–1
Deputy Administrator, Federal Aviation Administration	FAA–2	Safeair–2

10. Other Special Flights.

(a) Department of Energy flights. State the letters "R–A–C" (use phonetic alphabet equivalents) followed by the last 4 separate digits of the aircraft registration number.

EXAMPLE–
"Romeo Alfa Charlie One Six Five Three."

(b) Flight Inspection of navigational aids. State the call sign "FLIGHT CHECK" followed by the digits of the registration number.

EXAMPLE–
"Flight Check Three Niner Six Five Four."

(c) USAF aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions. State the call sign "SAMP" followed by the last three digits of the serial number.

EXAMPLE–
"SAMP Three One Six."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–17 SAMP.

11. Use a pilot's name in identification of an aircraft only in special or emergency situations.

b. Foreign registry. State one of the following:

1. Civil. State the aircraft type or the manufacturer's name followed by the letters/numbers of the aircraft registration, or state the letters or digits of the aircraft registration or call sign.

EXAMPLE–
"Stationair F–L–R–B."
"C–F–L–R–B."

NOTE–
Letters may be spoken individually or phonetically.

2. Air carrier. The abbreviated name of the operating company followed by the letters or digits of the registration or call sign.

EXAMPLE–
"Air France F–L–R–L–G."

3. The flight number in group form, or you may use separate digits if that is the format used by the pilot.

EXAMPLE–
"Scandinavian Sixty–eight."
"Scandinavian Six Eight."

4. Foreign Military. Except for military services identified in FAA Order JO 7340.2, Contractions, the name of the country and the military service followed by the separate digits or letters of the registration or call sign. For military services listed in FAA Order JO 7340.2, the approved telephony followed by the separate digits of the serial number.

Section 6. Weather Information

2–6–1. FAMILIARIZATION

Become familiar with pertinent weather information when coming on duty, and stay aware of current weather information needed to perform ATC duties.

2–6–2. HAZARDOUS INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY SERVICE (HIWAS)

Controllers must advise pilots of hazardous weather that may impact operations within 150 NM of their sector or area of jurisdiction. Hazardous weather information contained in HIWAS broadcasts includes Airmen's Meteorological Information (AIRMET), Significant Meteorological Information (SIGMET), Convective SIGMET (WST), Urgent Pilot Weather Reports (UUA), and Center Weather Advisories (CWA). Facilities must review alert messages to determine the geographical area and operational impact for hazardous weather information broadcasts. The broadcast is not required if aircraft on your frequency(s) will not be affected.

a. Controllers within commissioned HIWAS areas must broadcast a HIWAS alert on all frequencies, except emergency frequency, upon receipt of hazardous weather information. Controllers are required to disseminate data based on the operational impact on the sector or area of control jurisdiction.

NOTE–
The inclusion of the type and number of weather advisory responsible for the HIWAS advisory is optional.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT. HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION (SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, AIRMET, Urgent Pilot Weather Report (UUA), or Center Weather Advisory (CWA), Number or Numbers) FOR (geographical area) AVAILABLE ON HIWAS, FLIGHT WATCH, OR FLIGHT SERVICE FREQUENCIES.

b. Controllers outside of commissioned HIWAS areas must:

1. Advise pilots of the availability of hazardous weather advisories. Pilots requesting additional information should be directed to contact the nearest Flight Watch or Flight Service.

2. Apply the same procedure when HIWAS outlets, or outlets with radio coverage extending into your sector or airspace under your jurisdiction, are out of service.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATTENTION ALL AIRCRAFT. HAZARDOUS WEATHER INFORMATION FOR (geographical area) AVAILABLE FROM FLIGHT WATCH OR FLIGHT SERVICE.

c. Terminal facilities have the option to limit hazardous weather information broadcasts as follows: Tower cab and approach control facilities may opt to broadcast hazardous weather information alerts only when any part of the area described is within 50 NM of the airspace under their jurisdiction.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Chapter 7, Section 1, Meteorology, Para 7–1–5 through Para 7–1–9.

2–6–3. PIREP INFORMATION

Significant PIREP information includes reports of strong frontal activity, squall lines, thunderstorms, light to severe icing, wind shear and turbulence (including clear air turbulence) of moderate or greater intensity, volcanic eruptions and volcanic ash clouds, detection of sulfur gases (SO_2 or H_2S) in the cabin, and other conditions pertinent to flight safety.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–8 Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 6–3–1, Handling of SIGMETs, CWAs, and PIREPs.
AIM, Para 7–5–9, Flight Operations in Volcanic Ash.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–3–1, SIGMET and PIREP Handling.

a. Solicit PIREPs when requested or when one of the following conditions exists or is forecast for your area of jurisdiction:

1. Ceilings at or below 5,000 feet. These PIREPs must include cloud base/top reports when feasible.

TERMINAL. Ensure that at least one descent/climb-out PIREP, including cloud base/s, top/s, and other related phenomena, is obtained each hour.

EN ROUTE. When providing approach control services, the requirements stated in TERMINAL above apply.

2. Visibility (surface or aloft) at or less than 5 miles.

3. Thunderstorms and related phenomena.

4. Turbulence of moderate degree or greater.

5. Icing of light degree or greater.

6. Wind shear.

7. Volcanic ash clouds.

NOTE–
Pilots may forward PIREPs regarding volcanic activity using the format described in the Volcanic Activity Reporting Form (VAR) as depicted in the AIM, Appendix 2.

8. Detection of sulfur gases (SO_2 or H_2S), associated with volcanic activity, in the cabin.

NOTE–
The smell of sulfur gases in the cockpit may indicate volcanic activity that has not yet been detected or reported and/or possible entry into an ash-bearing cloud. SO_2 is identifiable as the sharp, acrid odor of a freshly struck match. H_2S has the odor of rotten eggs.

9. *TERMINAL.* Braking Action Advisories are in effect.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–3–5, Braking Action Advisories.
P/CG Term– Braking Action Advisories.

b. Record with the PIREPs:

1. Time.

2. Aircraft position.

3. Type aircraft.

4. Altitude.

5. When the PIREP involves icing include:

(a) Icing type and intensity.

(b) Air temperature in which icing is occurring.

c. Obtain PIREPs directly from the pilot, or if the PIREP has been requested by another facility, you may instruct the pilot to deliver it directly to that facility.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REQUEST/SAY FLIGHT CONDITIONS.

Or if appropriate,

REQUEST/SAY (specific conditions; i.e., ride, cloud, visibility, etc.) CONDITIONS.

If necessary,

OVER (fix),

or

ALONG PRESENT ROUTE,

or

BETWEEN (fix) AND (fix).

d. Handle PIREPs as follows:

1. Relay pertinent PIREP information to concerned aircraft in a timely manner.

2. *EN ROUTE.* Relay all operationally significant PIREPs to the facility weather coordinator.

3. *TERMINAL.* Relay all operationally significant PIREPs to:

(a) The appropriate intrafacility positions.

(b) The FSS serving the area in which the report was obtained.

NOTE–
The FSS is responsible for long line dissemination.

(c) Other concerned terminal or en route ATC facilities, including non–FAA facilities.

(d) Use the word *gain* and/or *loss* when describing to pilots the effects of wind shear on airspeed.

EXAMPLE–
"Delta Seven Twenty–one, a Boeing Seven Twenty–seven, previously reported wind shear, loss of Two Five knots at Four Hundred feet."

"U.S. Air Seventy–six, a D–C Niner, previously reported wind shear, gain of Twenty–Five knots between Niner Hundred and Six Hundred feet, followed by a loss of Five Zero knots between Five Hundred feet and the surface."

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 7–1–24, Wind Shear PIREPs.

2–6–4. WEATHER AND CHAFF SERVICES

a. Issue pertinent information on observed/reported weather and chaff areas. When requested by the pilot, provide radar navigational guidance and/or approve deviations around weather or chaff areas.

1. Issue weather and chaff information by defining the area of coverage in terms of azimuth (by referring to the 12–hour clock) and distance from the aircraft or by indicating the general width of the area and the area of coverage in terms of fixes or distance and direction from fixes.

PHRASEOLOGY–
WEATHER/CHAFF AREA BETWEEN (number)O'CLOCK AND (number) O'CLOCK (number) MILES,

or

(number) MILE BAND OF WEATHER/CHAFF FROM (fix or number of miles and direction from fix) TO (fix or number of miles and direction from fix).

2. When a deviation cannot be approved as requested and the situation permits, suggest an alternative course of action.

PHRASEOLOGY–
UNABLE DEVIATION (state possible alternate course of action).

FLY HEADING (heading),

or

PROCEED DIRECT (name of NAVAID).

b. In areas of significant weather, plan ahead and be prepared to suggest, upon pilot request, the use of alternative routes/altitudes.

PHRASEOLOGY–
DEVIATION APPROVED, (restrictions if necessary), ADVISE WHEN ABLE TO:

RETURN TO COURSE,
or
RESUME OWN NAVIGATION,
or
FLY HEADING (heading),
or
PROCEED DIRECT (name of NAVAID).

NOTE–
Weather significant to the safety of aircraft includes such conditions as funnel cloud activity, lines of thunderstorms, embedded thunderstorms, large hail, wind shear, microbursts, moderate to extreme turbulence (including CAT), and light to severe icing.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 7–1–14, ATC Inflight Weather Avoidance Assistance.

c. Inform any tower for which you provide approach control services of observed precipitation on radar which is likely to affect their operations.

d. Use the term "precipitation" when describing radar–derived weather. Issue the precipitation intensity from the lowest descriptor (LIGHT) to the highest descriptor (EXTREME) when that information is available. Do not use the word "turbulence" in describing radar–derived weather.

1. LIGHT.

2. MODERATE.

3. HEAVY.

4. EXTREME.

NOTE–
Weather and Radar Processor (WARP) does not display light intensity.

PHRASEOLOGY–
AREA OF (Intensity) PRECIPITATION BETWEEN (number) O'CLOCK AND (number) O'CLOCK, (number) MILES, MOVING (direction) AT (number) KNOTS, TOPS (altitude). AREA IS (number) MILES IN DIAMETER.

EXAMPLE–
1. *"Area of extreme precipitation between eleven o'clock and one o'clock, one zero miles moving east at two zero knots, tops flight level three niner zero."*

2. *"Area of heavy precipitation between ten o'clock and two o'clock, one five miles. Area is two five miles in diameter."*

3. *"Area of heavy to extreme precipitation between ten o'clock and two o'clock, one five miles. Area is two five miles in diameter."*

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Precipitation Radar Weather Descriptions.

e. When precipitation intensity information is not available.

PHRASEOLOGY–
AREA OF PRECIPITATION BETWEEN (number) O'CLOCK AND (number) O'CLOCK, (number) MILES. MOVING (direction) AT (number) KNOTS, TOPS (altitude). AREA IS (number) MILES IN DIAMETER, INTENSITY UNKNOWN.

EXAMPLE–
"Area of precipitation between one o'clock and three o'clock, three five miles moving south at one five knots, tops flight level three three zero. Area is three zero miles in diameter, intensity unknown."

NOTE–
Phraseology using precipitation intensity descriptions is only applicable when the radar precipitation intensity information is determined by NWS radar equipment or NAS ground based digitized radar equipment with weather capabilities. This precipitation may not reach the surface.

f. *EN ROUTE.* When issuing Air Route Surveillance Radar (ARSR) precipitation intensity use the following:

1. Describe the lowest displayable precipitation intensity as MODERATE.

2. Describe the highest displayable precipitation intensity as HEAVY to EXTREME.

PHRASEOLOGY–
AREA OF (Intensity) PRECIPITATION BETWEEN (number) O'CLOCK and (number) O'CLOCK, (number) MILES, MOVING (direction) AT (number) KNOTS, TOPS (altitude). AREA IS (number) MILES IN DIAMETER.

EXAMPLE–
1. *"Area of moderate precipitation between ten o'clock and one o'clock, three zero miles moving east at two zero knots, tops flight level three seven zero.*

2. *"Area of moderate precipitation between ten o'clock and three o'clock, two zero miles. Area is two five miles in diameter."*

g. When operational/equipment limitations exist, controllers must ensure that the highest available level of precipitation intensity within their area of jurisdiction is displayed.

h. The supervisory traffic management coordinator–in–charge/operations supervisor/controller–in–charge must verify the digitized radar weather information by the best means available (e.g., pilot reports, local tower personnel, etc.) if the weather data displayed by digitized radar is reported as questionable or erroneous. Errors in weather radar presentation must be reported to the technical operations technician and the air traffic supervisor must determine if the digitized radar derived weather data is to be displayed and a NOTAM distributed.

NOTE–
Anomalous propagation (AP) is a natural occurrence affecting radar and does not in itself constitute a weather circuit failure.

2–6–5. CALM WIND CONDITIONS

TERMINAL. Describe the wind as calm when the wind velocity is less than three knots.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–5–3 Tailwind Components.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–4 Intersecting Runway Separation.

2–6–6. REPORTING WEATHER CONDITIONS

a. When the prevailing visibility at the usual point of observation, or at the tower level, is less than 4 miles, tower personnel must take prevailing visibility observations and apply the observations as follows:

1. Use the lower of the two observations (tower or surface) for aircraft operations.

2. Forward tower visibility observations to the weather observer.

3. Notify the weather observer when the tower observes the prevailing visibility decrease to less than 4 miles or increase to 4 miles or more.

b. Forward current weather changes to the appropriate control facility as follows:

1. When the official weather changes to a condition which is below 1,000–foot ceiling or below the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or less than 3 miles visibility, and when it improves to a condition which is better than those above.

2. Changes which are classified as special weather observations during the time that weather conditions are below 1,000–foot ceiling or the highest circling minimum, whichever is greater, or less than 3 miles visibility.

c. Towers at airports where military turbo-jet en route descents are routinely conducted must also report the conditions to the ARTCC even if it is not the controlling facility.

d. If the receiving facility informs you that weather reports are not required for a specific time period, discontinue the reports. The time period specified should not exceed the duration of the receiving controller's tour of duty.

e. *EN ROUTE.* When you determine that weather reports for an airport will not be required for a specific time period, inform the FSS or tower of this determination. The time period specified should not exceed the duration of receiving controller's tour of duty.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–2 Forwarding Approach Information by Nonapproach Control Facilities.

2–6–7. DISSEMINATING WEATHER INFORMATION

TERMINAL. Observed elements of weather information must be disseminated as follows:

a. General weather information, such as "large breaks in the overcast," "visibility lowering to the

south," or similar statements which do not include specific values, and any elements derived directly from instruments, pilots, or radar may be transmitted to pilots or other ATC facilities without consulting the weather reporting station.

b. Specific values, such as ceiling and visibility, may be transmitted if obtained by one of the following means:

1. You are properly certificated and acting as official weather observer for the elements being reported.

NOTE–
USAF controllers do not serve as official weather observers.

2. You have obtained the information from the official observer for the elements being reported.

3. The weather report was composed or verified by the weather station.

4. The information is obtained from an official Automated Weather Observation System (AWOS) or an Automated Surface Observation System (ASOS).

c. Differences between weather elements observed from the tower and those reported by the weather station must be reported to the official observer for the element concerned.

Section 7. Taxi and Ground Movement Procedures

3–7–1. GROUND TRAFFIC MOVEMENT

Issue by radio or directional light signals specific instructions which approve or disapprove the movement of aircraft, vehicles, equipment, or personnel on the movement area except where permitted in an LOA.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4–3–1, Letters of Agreement
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4–3–2, Appropriate Subjects

a. Do not issue *conditional* instructions that are dependent upon the movement of an arrival aircraft on or approaching the runway or a departure aircraft established on a takeoff roll. Do not say, "Line up and wait behind landing traffic," or "Taxi/proceed across Runway Three–Six behind departing/landing Citation." The above requirements do not preclude issuing instructions to follow an aircraft observed to be operating on the movement area in accordance with an ATC clearance/instruction and in such a manner that the instructions to follow are not ambiguous.

b. Do not issue unconditional instructions when authorizing movement on a runway/taxiway for the purpose of airfield checks or other airport operations. Instructions must ensure positive control with specific instructions to proceed on a runway or movement area, and as necessary, hold short instructions.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–3, USE OF ACTIVE RUNWAYS
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–7–2, TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS

EXAMPLE–
"Airport 1, proceed on Runway 26R, hold short of Runway 18L."

"(Tower), Airport 1 at taxiway B8, request to inspect Runway 26R." "Airport 1 proceed as requested, hold short of Runway 18L."

"Airport 1 proceed on taxi way B, hold short of Runway 18L."

NOTE–
The following are examples of unconditional instructions and are not approved for use: "THE FIELD IS YOURS," "CLEARED ON ALL SURFACES," "THE AIRPORT IS YOURS," and "PROCEED ON ALL RUNWAYS AND TAXIWAYS."

c. Do not use the word "cleared" in conjunction with authorization for aircraft to taxi or equipment/vehicle/personnel operations. Use the prefix "taxi," "proceed," or "hold," as appropriate, for aircraft instructions and "proceed" or "hold" for equipment/vehicles/personnel.

d. Intersection departures may be initiated by a controller or a controller may authorize an intersection departure if a pilot requests. Issue the measured distance from the intersection to the runway end rounded "down" to the nearest 50 feet to any pilot who requests and to all military aircraft, unless use of the intersection is covered in appropriate directives.

NOTE–
1. *Exceptions are authorized where specific military aircraft routinely make intersection takeoffs and procedures are defined in appropriate directives. The authority exercising operational control of such aircraft ensures that all pilots are thoroughly familiar with these procedures, including the usable runway length from the applicable intersection.*

2. *Some airports publish "declared distances" for a particular runway. These are published in the Airport Facility Directory (A/FD) or the Aeronautical Information Publication (AIP) and there is no requirement that facility personnel be aware of them. These distances are a means of satisfying airport design criteria and are intended to be used by pilots and/or operators for preflight performance planning only. There are no special markings, signing, or lighting associated with declared distances and they do not limit the actual runway available for use by an aircraft. Therefore, they cannot be used for any air traffic control purpose. If pilots inquire about the existence of declared distances, refer them to the A/FD or AIP.*

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator) INTERSECTION DEPARTURE (remaining length) FEET AVAILABLE.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–4 Line Up and Wait (LUAW).

e. Do not use the term "full length" when the runway length available for departures has been temporarily shortened. On permanently shortened runways, do not use the term "full length" until the Airport/Facility Directory is updated to include the change(s).

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-11, Airport Construction
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-12, Change in Runway Length Due to Construction

3–7–2. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS

Issue the route for the aircraft/vehicle to follow on the movement area in concise and easy to understand terms. The taxi clearance must include the specific route to follow. When a taxi clearance to a runway is issued to an aircraft, confirm the aircraft has the correct runway assignment.

NOTE–
1. *A pilot's read back of taxi instructions with the runway assignment can be considered confirmation of runway assignment.*

2. *Movement of aircraft or vehicles on nonmovement areas is the responsibility of the pilot, the aircraft operator, or the airport management.*

a. When authorizing an aircraft/vehicle to proceed on the movement area or to any point other than assigned takeoff runway, specify the route/taxi instructions. If it is the intent to hold the aircraft/vehicle short of any given point along the taxi route, issue the route and then state the holding instructions.

NOTE–
1. *The absence of holding instructions authorizes an aircraft/vehicle to cross all taxiways that intersect the taxi route.*

2. *Movement of aircraft or vehicles on non–movement areas is the responsibility of the pilot, the aircraft operator, or the airport management.*

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD POSITION.

HOLD FOR (reason)

CROSS (runway/taxiway)

or

TAXI/CONTINUE TAXIING/PROCEED/VIA (route),

or

ON (runway number or taxiways, etc.),

or

TO (location),

or

(direction),

or

ACROSS RUNWAY (number).

or

VIA (route), HOLD SHORT OF (location)

or

FOLLOW (traffic) (restrictions as necessary)

or

BEHIND (traffic).

EXAMPLE–
"Cross Runway Two–Eight Left, hold short of Runway Two–EightRight."

"Taxi/continue taxiing/proceed to the hangar."

"Taxi/continue taxiing/proceed straight ahead then via ramp to the hangar."

"Taxi/continue taxiing/proceed on Taxiway Charlie, hold short of Runway Two–Seven."

or

"Taxi/continue taxing/proceed on Charlie, hold short of Runway Two–Seven."

b. When authorizing an aircraft to taxi to an assigned takeoff runway, state the departure runway followed by the specific taxi route. Issue hold short restrictions when an aircraft will be required to hold short of a runway or other points along the taxi route.

NOTE–
If the specific taxi route ends into a connecting taxiway with the same identifier (for example, taxiway "A" connects with Taxiway "A1") at the approach end of the runway, the connecting taxiway may be omitted from the clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number), TAXI VIA (route as necessary).

or

RUNWAY (number), TAXI VIA (route as necessary)(hold short instructions as necessary)."

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Three–Six Left, taxi via taxiway Alpha, hold short of taxiway Charlie."

or

"Runway Three–Six Left, taxi via Alpha, hold short of Charlie."

or

"Runway Three–Six Left, taxi via taxiway Alpha, hold short of Runway Two–Seven Right."

or

"Runway Three–Six Left, taxi via Charlie, cross Runway Two–SevenLeft, hold short of Runway Two–SevenRight."

or

"Runway Three–Six Left, taxi via Alpha, Charlie, cross Runway One–Zero."

c. Aircraft/vehicles must receive a clearance for each runway their route crosses. An aircraft/vehicle must have crossed a previous runway before another runway crossing clearance may be issued.

NOTE–
A clearance is required for aircraft/vehicles to operate on any active, inactive, or closed runway except for vehicles operating on closed runways in accordance with a Letter of Agreement (LOA).

EXAMPLE–
"Cross Runway One–Six Left, hold short of Runway One–SixRight."

d. When an aircraft/vehicle is instructed to "follow" traffic and requires a runway crossing, issue a runway crossing clearance in addition to the follow instructions and/or hold short instructions, as applicable.

EXAMPLE–
"Follow (traffic), cross Runway Two–Seven Right."

or

"Follow (traffic), cross Runway Two Seven–Right, hold short Runway Two–Seven Left."

e. At those airports where the taxi distance between runway centerlines is less than 1,000 feet, multiple runway crossings may be issued with a single clearance. The air traffic manager must submit a request to the appropriate Terminal Services Director of Operations for approval before authorizing multiple runway crossings.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–3–10 Multiple Runway Crossings.

f. Request a read back of runway hold short instructions when it is not received from the pilot/vehicle operator.

PHRASEOLOGY–
READ BACK HOLD INSTRUCTIONS.

EXAMPLE–
1. *"American Four Ninety Two, Runway Three Six Left, taxi via taxiway Charlie, hold short of Runway Two Seven Right."*

or

"American Four Ninety Two, Runway Three Six Left, taxi via Charlie, hold short of Runway Two Seven Right."

"American Four Ninety Two, Roger."

"American Four Ninety Two, read back hold instructions."

2. *"Cleveland Tower, American Sixty Three is ready for departure."*

"American Sixty Three, hold short of Runway Two Three Left, traffic one mile final."

"American Sixty Three, Roger."

"American Sixty Three, read back hold instructions."

3. *"OPS Three proceed via taxiway Charlie hold short of Runway Two Seven."*

or

"OPS Three proceed via Charlie hold short of Runway Two Seven."

"OPS Three, Roger."

"OPS Three, read back hold instructions."

NOTE–
Read back hold instructions phraseology may be initiated for any point on a movement area when the controller believes the read back is necessary.

g. Issue progressive taxi/ground movement instructions when:

1. A pilot/operator requests.

2. The specialist deems it necessary due to traffic or field conditions, e.g., construction or closed taxiways.

3. Necessary during reduced visibility, especially when the taxi route is not visible from the tower.

NOTE–
Progressive instructions may include step–by–step directions and/or directional turns.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–7–4 Runway Proximity.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–11–1, Taxi and Ground Movement Operation.

h. Issue instructions to expedite a taxiing aircraft or a moving vehicle.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TAXI WITHOUT DELAY (traffic if necessary).

EXIT/PROCEED/CROSS (runway/taxiway) WITHOUT DELAY.

3–7–3. GROUND OPERATIONS

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

Avoid clearances which require:

a. Heavy jet aircraft to use greater than normal taxiing power.

b. Small aircraft or helicopters to taxi in close proximity to taxiing or hover-taxi helicopters.

NOTE–
Use caution when taxiing smaller aircraft/helicopters in the vicinity of larger aircraft.

REFERENCE–
AC 90–23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Para 10 and Para 11.

3–7–4. RUNWAY PROXIMITY

Hold a taxiing aircraft or vehicle clear of the runway as follows:

a. Instruct aircraft or vehicle to hold short of a specific runway.

b. Instruct aircraft or vehicle to hold at a specified point.

c. Issue traffic information as necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD SHORT OF/AT (runway number or specific point), (traffic or other information).

NOTE–
Establishing hold lines/signs is the responsibility of the airport manager. The standards for surface measurements, markings, and signs are contained in AC 150/5300–13, Airport Design; AC 150/5340–1, Standards for Airport Markings, and AC 150/5340–18, Standards for Airport Sign Systems. The operator is responsible for properly positioning the aircraft, vehicle, or equipment at the appropriate hold line/sign or designated point. The requirements in para 3–1–12, Visually Scanning Runways, remain valid as appropriate.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–7–2 Taxi and Ground Movement Operations.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–10 Altitude Restricted Low Approach.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–5 Vehicles/Equipment/Personnel on Runways.

3–7–5. PRECISION APPROACH CRITICAL AREA

a. ILS critical area dimensions are described in FAAO 6750.16, Siting Criteria for Instrument Landing Systems. Aircraft and vehicle access to the ILS/MLS critical area must be controlled to ensure the integrity of ILS/MLS course signals whenever conditions are less than reported ceiling 800 feet or visibility less than 2 miles. Do not authorize vehicles/aircraft to operate in or over the critical area, except as specified in subpara a1, whenever an arriving aircraft is inside the ILS outer marker (OM) or the fix used in lieu of the OM unless the arriving aircraft has reported the runway in sight or is circling to land on another runway.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD SHORT OF (runway) ILS/MLS CRITICAL AREA.

1. LOCALIZER CRITICAL AREA

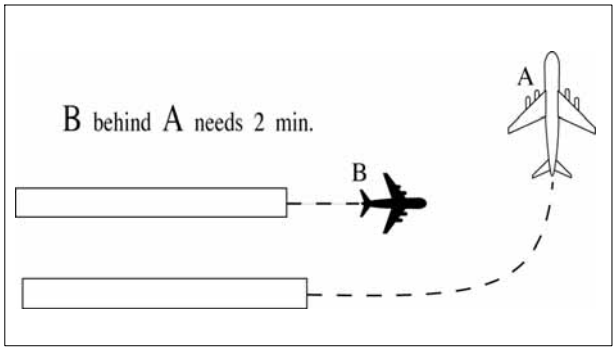
(a) Do not authorize vehicle or aircraft operations in or over the area when an arriving aircraft is inside the ILS OM or the fix used in lieu of the OM when conditions are less than reported ceiling 800 feet or visibility less than 2 miles, except:

(1) A preceding arriving aircraft on the same or another runway that passes over or through the area while landing or exiting the runway.

(2) A preceding departing aircraft or missed approach on the same or another runway that passes through or over the area.

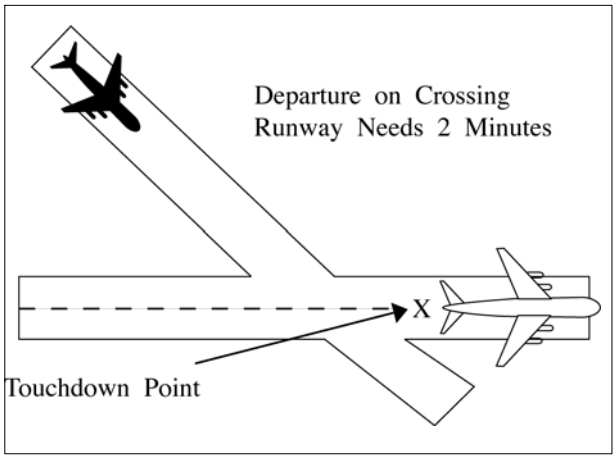
(b) In addition to subpara a1(a), do not authorize vehicles or aircraft operations in or over the area when an arriving aircraft is inside the middle marker when conditions are less than reported ceiling 200 feet or RVR 2,000 feet.

FIG 3–9–10
Parallel Runway



4. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft departing behind a landing heavy jet/B757 on a crossing runway if the departure will fly through the airborne path of the arrival– *2 minutes.* (See FIG 3–9–11.)

FIG 3–9–11
Departure on Crossing Runway



5. Air traffic controllers must not approve pilot requests to deviate from the required wake turbulence time interval if the preceding aircraft is a heavy jet/B757.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–8–3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–8–5, Departures and Arrivals on Parallel or Nonintersecting Diverging Runways.

3–9–9. TAKEOFF CLEARANCE

a. When issuing a clearance for takeoff, first state the runway number followed by the takeoff clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number), CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE–
"RUNWAY TWO SEVEN, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF."

NOTE–
Turbine–powered aircraft may be considered ready for takeoff when they reach the runway unless they advise otherwise.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–3–1, Departure Terminology.

b. When clearing an aircraft for takeoff from an intersection, state the runway intersection.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator) CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

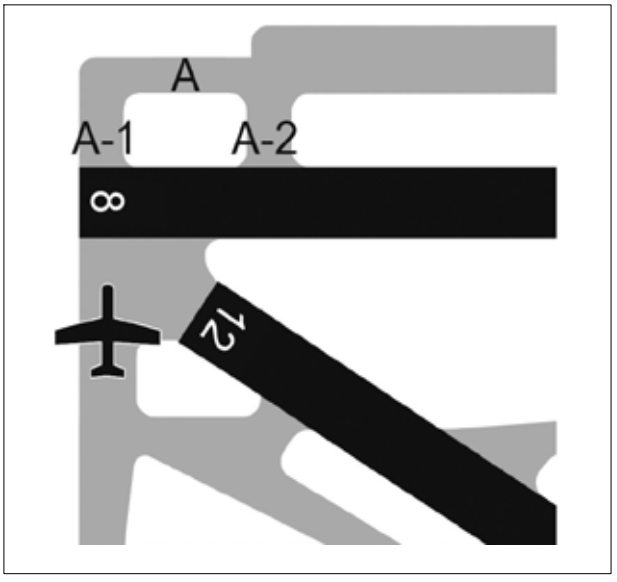
c. When two or more aircraft call the tower ready for departure, one or more at the full length of a runway and one or more at an intersection, state the location of the aircraft at the full length of the runway when clearing that aircraft for takeoff.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number), FULL LENGTH, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE–
"American Four Eighty Two, Runway Three Zero full length, cleared for takeoff."

d. The controller must ensure that all runways along the taxi route that lead to the departure runway are crossed before the takeoff clearance is issued, except as stated in para 3–9–9e.

FIG 3–9–12
Runway/Taxiway Proximity



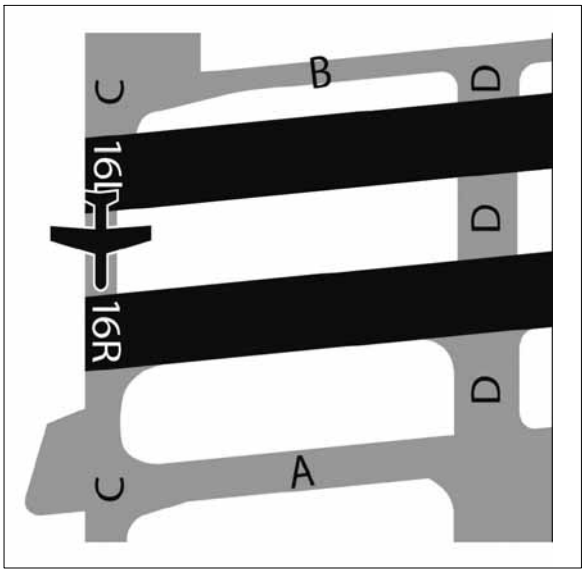
e. At those airports where the airport configuration does not allow for an aircraft to completely cross one

runway and hold short of the departure runway and/or where airports do not have runway hold markings between runways, state the runway to be crossed with the takeoff clearance if the aircraft is not able to complete a runway crossing before reaching its departure runway.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CROSS RUNWAY (number), RUNWAY (number) CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE–
"CROSS RUNWAY TWO FOUR LEFT, RUNWAY TWO FOUR RIGHT, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF."

FIG 3–9–13
Runway/Taxiway Proximity



REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–3–9, Takeoff Clearance.
P/CG Term– Clear of the Runway.

f. Do not use the term "full length" when the runway length available for departure has been temporarily shortened. On permanently shortened runways, do not use the term "full length" until the Airport/Facility Directory is updated to include the change(s).

NOTE–
The use of the term "full length" could be interpreted by the pilot(s) as the available runway length prior to the runway being shortened.

g. Whenever a runway length has been temporarily or permanently shortened, state the word "shortened" immediately following the runway number as part of the takeoff clearance. This information must be issued in conjunction with the takeoff clearance.

1. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the takeoff clearance for the duration of the construction project when the runway is temporarily shortened.

2. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the takeoff clearance until the Airport/Facility Directory is updated to include the change(s) when the runway is permanently shortened.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) SHORTENED, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Two-Seven shortened, cleared for takeoff."

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator) INTERSECTION DEPARTURE SHORTENED, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Two-Seven at Juliet, intersection departure shortened, cleared for takeoff."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-11, Airport Construction
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-12, Change in Runway Length Due to Construction

h. *USAF.* When an aircraft is cleared for takeoff, inform it of the closest traffic within 6 miles on final approach to the same runway. If the approaching aircraft is on a different frequency, inform it of the departing aircraft.

i. *USA/USN/USAF.* Issue surface wind and takeoff clearance to aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number), WIND (surface wind in direction and velocity). CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.

3–9–10. CANCELLATION OF TAKEOFF CLEARANCE

Cancel a previously issued clearance for takeoff and inform the pilot of the reason if circumstances require. Once an aircraft has started takeoff roll, cancel the takeoff clearance only for the purpose of safety.

NOTE–
In no case should a takeoff clearance be canceled after an aircraft has started its takeoff roll solely for the purpose of meeting traffic management requirements/EDCT.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CANCEL TAKEOFF CLEARANCE (reason).

Section 10. Arrival Procedures and Separation

3–10–1. LANDING INFORMATION

Provide current landing information, as appropriate, to arriving aircraft. Landing information contained in the ATIS broadcast may be omitted if the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code. Runway, wind, and altimeter may be omitted if a pilot uses the phrase "have numbers." Issue landing information by including the following:

NOTE–
Pilot use of "have numbers" does not indicate receipt of the ATIS broadcast.

a. Specific traffic pattern information (may be omitted if the aircraft is to circle the airport to the left).

PHRASEOLOGY–
ENTER LEFT/RIGHT BASE.

STRAIGHT–IN.

MAKE STRAIGHT–IN.

STRAIGHT–IN APPROVED.

RIGHT TRAFFIC.

MAKE RIGHT TRAFFIC.

RIGHT TRAFFIC APPROVED.

CONTINUE.

NOTE–
Additional information should normally be issued with instructions to continue. Example: "continue, report one mile final"; "continue, expect landing clearance two mile final"; etc.

b. Runway in use.

c. Surface wind.

d. Altimeter setting.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–7–1 Current Settings.

e. Any supplementary information.

f. Clearance to land.

g. Requests for additional position reports. Use prominent geographical fixes which can be easily recognized from the air, preferably those depicted on sectional charts. This does not preclude the use of the legs of the traffic pattern as reporting points.

NOTE–
At some locations, VFR checkpoints are depicted on sectional aeronautical and terminal area charts. In selecting geographical fixes, depicted VFR checkpoints are preferred unless the pilot exhibits a familiarity with the local area.

h. Ceiling and visibility if either is below basic VFR minima.

i. Low level wind shear or microburst advisories when available.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–8, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories.

j. Issue braking action for the runway in use as received from pilots or the airport management when Braking Action Advisories are in effect.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–3–5, Braking Action Advisories.

k. If the pilot does not indicate the appropriate ATIS code, and when a runway has been shortened, controllers must ensure that pilots receive the runway number combined with a shortened announcement for all arriving aircraft.

3–10–2. FORWARDING APPROACH INFORMATION BY NONAPPROACH CONTROL FACILITIES

a. Forward the following, as appropriate, to the control facility having IFR jurisdiction in your area. You may eliminate those items that, because of local conditions or situations, are fully covered in a letter of agreement or a facility directive.

1. When you clear an arriving aircraft for a visual approach.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–1, Visual Approach.

2. Aircraft arrival time.

3. Cancellation of IFR flight plan.

4. Information on a missed approach, unreported, or overdue aircraft.

5. Runway in use.

6. Weather as required.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–6–6, Reporting Weather Conditions.

b. When the weather is below 1,000 feet or 3 miles or the highest circling minimums, whichever is greater, issue current weather to aircraft executing an instrument approach if it changes from that on the ATIS or that previously forwarded to the center/approach control.

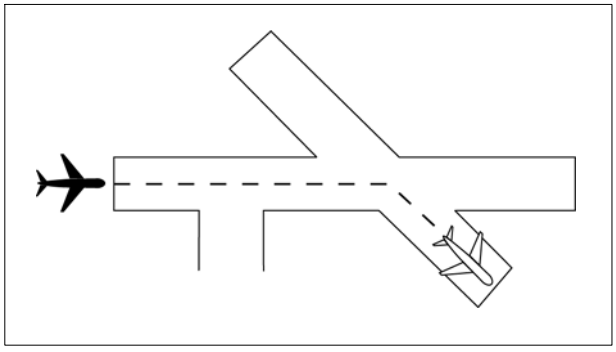
3–10–3. SAME RUNWAY SEPARATION

a. Separate an arriving aircraft from another aircraft using the same runway by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold until one of the following conditions exists or unless authorized in para 3–10–10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.

1. The other aircraft has landed and is clear of the runway. (See FIG 3–10–1.) Between sunrise and sunset, if you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks and the other aircraft has landed, it need not be clear of the runway if the following minimum distance from the landing threshold exists:

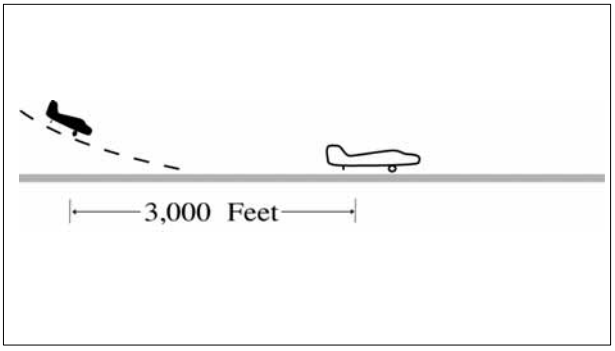
REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Clear of the Runway.

FIG 3–10–1
Same Runway Separation



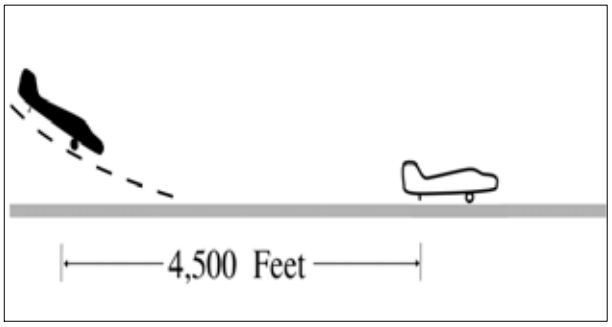
(a) When a Category I aircraft is landing behind a Category I or II– *3,000 feet*.
(See FIG 3–10–2.)

FIG 3–10–2
Same Runway Separation



(b) When a Category II aircraft is landing behind a Category I or II– *4,500 feet.*
(See FIG 3–10–3.)

FIG 3–10–3
Same Runway Separation



2. The other aircraft has departed and crossed the runway end. (See FIG 3–10–4). If you can determine distances by reference to suitable landmarks and the other aircraft is airborne, it need not have crossed the runway end if the following minimum distance from the landing threshold exists:

(a) Category I aircraft landing behind Category I or II– *3,000 feet*.

(b) Category II aircraft landing behind Category I or II– *4,500 feet.*

(c) When either is a category III aircraft– *6,000 feet*. (See FIG 3–10–5.)

FIG 3–10–4
Same Runway Separation

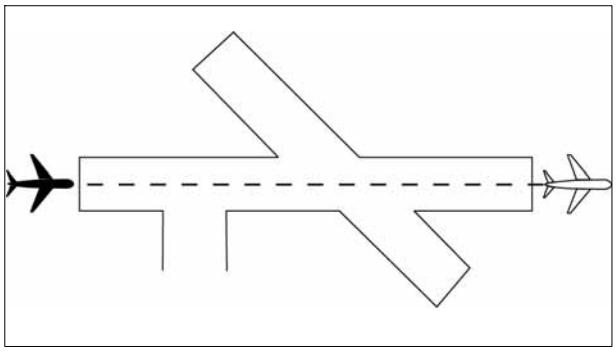
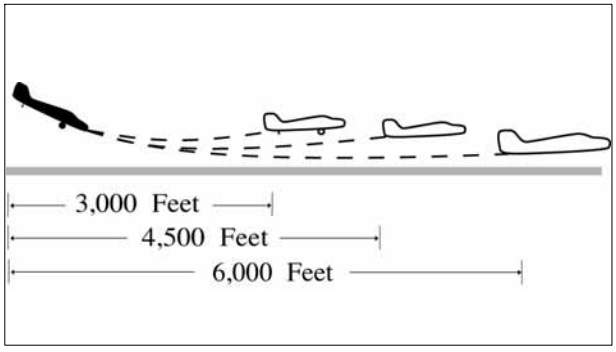


FIG 3–10–5
Same Runway Separation



3. When the succeeding aircraft is a helicopter, visual separation may be applied in lieu of using distance minima.

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

b. Issue wake turbulence advisories, and the position, altitude if known, and the direction of flight of:

1. The heavy jet/B757 to aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving heavy jet/B757 on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet.

2. The large aircraft to a small aircraft landing behind a departing/arriving large aircraft on the same or parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet.

REFERENCE–
AC 90–23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Para 12, Pilot Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–10, Altitude Restricted Low Approach.

EXAMPLE–
1. **"***Runway two seven left cleared to land, caution wake turbulence, heavy Boeing 747 departing runway two seven right."*

2. *"Number two follow Boeing 757 on two-mile final. Caution wake turbulence."*

3–10–4. INTERSECTING RUNWAY SEPARATION

Issue traffic information to each aircraft operating on intersecting runways.

a. Separate an arriving aircraft using one runway from another aircraft using an intersecting runway or a nonintersecting runway when the flight paths intersect by ensuring that the arriving aircraft does not cross the landing threshold or flight path of the other aircraft until one of the following conditions exists:

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–21, Traffic Advisories.

1. The preceding aircraft has departed and passed the intersection/flight path or is airborne and turning to avert any conflict.
(See FIG 3–10–6 and FIG 3–10–7.)

FIG 3–10–6
Intersecting Runway Separation

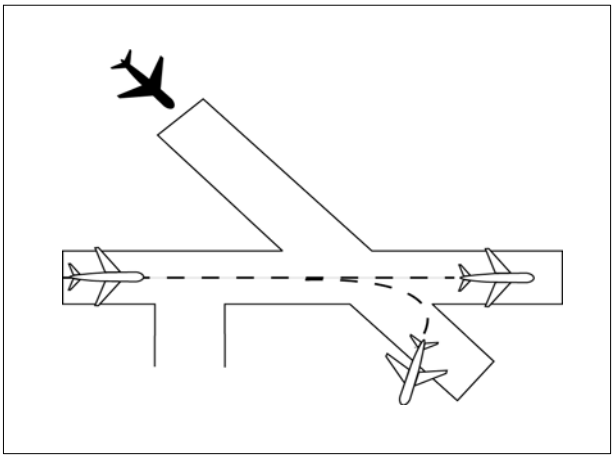
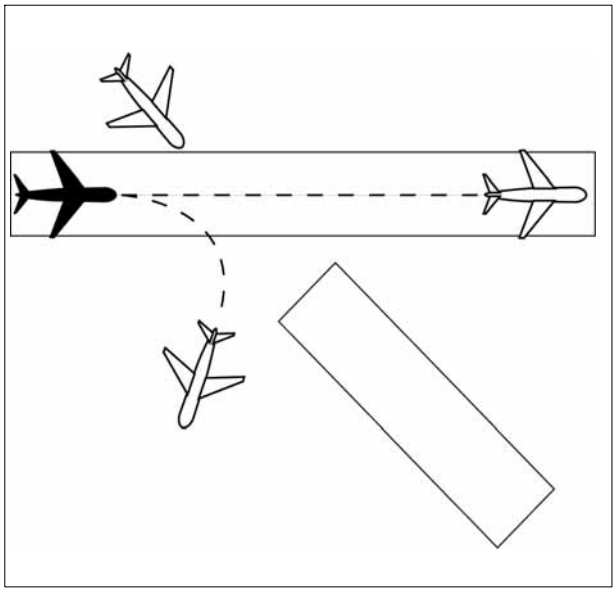


FIG 3–10–7
Intersecting Runway Separation



2. A preceding arriving aircraft is clear of the landing runway, completed landing roll and will hold short of the intersection/flight path, or has passed the intersection/flight path.
(See FIG 3–10–8 and FIG 3–10–9.)

FIG 3–10–8
Intersection Runway Separation

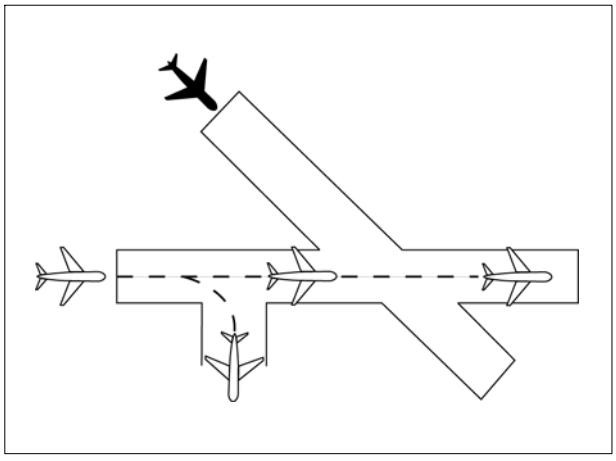
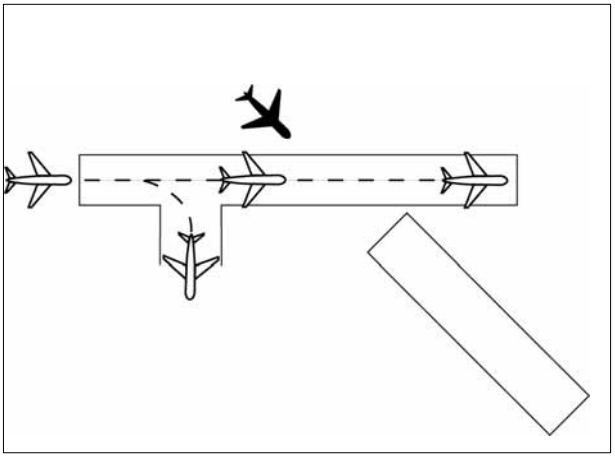


FIG 3–10–9
Intersection Runway Separation



NOTE–
When visual separation is being applied by the tower, appropriate control instructions and traffic advisories must be issued to ensure go around or missed approaches avert any conflict with the flight path of traffic on the other runway.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–2–1 Visual Separation, subpara aNO TAG.

b. "USA/USAF/USN NOT APPLICABLE." An aircraft may be authorized to takeoff from one runway while another aircraft lands simultaneously on an intersecting runway or an aircraft lands on one runway while another aircraft lands simultaneously on an intersecting runway, or an aircraft lands to hold short of an intersecting taxiway or some other predetermined point such as an approach/departure flight path using procedures specified in the current LAHSO directive. The procedure must be approved by the air traffic manager and be in accordance with a facility directive. The following conditions apply:

NOTE–
Application of these procedures does not relieve controllers from the responsibility of providing other appropriate separation contained in this order.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–3–7, Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO).

1. A simultaneous takeoff and landing operation must only be conducted in VFR conditions.

2. Instruct the landing aircraft to hold short of the intersecting runway being used by the aircraft taking off. In the case of simultaneous landings and no operational benefit is lost, restrict the aircraft of the lesser weight category (if known). LAHSO clearances must only be issued to aircraft that are

listed in the current LAHSO directive, whose Available Landing Distance (ALD) does not exceed the landing distance requirement for the runway condition.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HOLD SHORT OF RUNWAY (runway number), (traffic, type aircraft or other information).

NOTE–
Pilots who prefer to use the full length of the runway or a runway different from that specified are expected to advise ATC prior to landing.

3. Issue traffic information to both aircraft involved and obtain an acknowledgment from each. Request a read back of hold short instructions when they are not received from the pilot of the restricted aircraft.

EXAMPLE–
1. *"Runway one eight cleared to land, hold short of runway one four left, traffic, (type aircraft) landing runway one four left."*

(When pilot of restricted aircraft responds with only acknowledgment):

"Runway one four left cleared to land, traffic, (type aircraft) landing runway one eight will hold short of the intersection."

"Read back hold short instructions."

2. *"Runway three six cleared to land, hold short of runway three three, traffic, (type aircraft) departing runway three three."*

"Traffic, (type aircraft) landing runway three six will hold short of the intersection, runway three three cleared for takeoff."

4. Issue the measured distance from the landing threshold to the hold short point rounded "down" to the nearest 50–foot increment if requested by either aircraft.

EXAMPLE–
"Five thousand fifty feet available."

5. The conditions in subparas b2, 3, and 4 must be met in sufficient time for the pilots to take other action, if desired, and no later than the time landing clearance is issued.

6. Land and Hold Short runways must be free of any contamination as described in the current LAHSO directive, with no reports that braking action is less than good.

7. There is no tailwind for the landing aircraft restricted to hold short of the intersection. The wind may be described as "calm" when appropriate.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–6–5, Calm Wind Conditions.

8. The aircraft required landing distances are listed in the current LAHSO directive.

9. STOL aircraft operations are in accordance with a letter of agreement with the aircraft operator/pilot or the pilot confirms that it is a STOL aircraft.

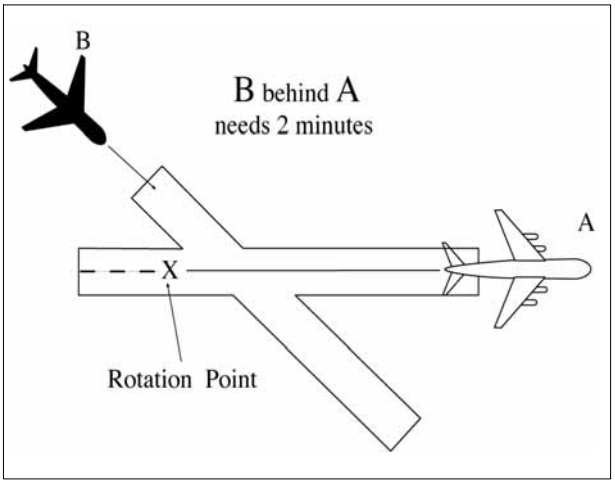
WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

c. Separate IFR/VFR aircraft landing behind a departing heavy jet/B757 on a crossing runway if the arrival will fly through the airborne path of the departure– *2 minutes* or the appropriate radar separation minima. (See FIG 3–10–10.)

d. Issue wake turbulence cautionary advisories, the position, altitude if known, and direction of flight of the heavy jet/B757 to:

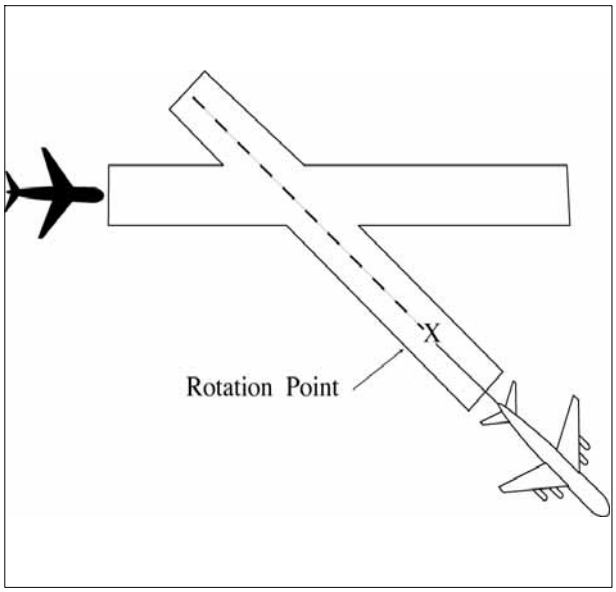
REFERENCE–
AC 90–23, Aircraft Wake Turbulence, Para 12, Pilot Responsibility.

FIG 3–10–10
Intersecting Runway Separation



1. IFR/VFR aircraft landing on crossing runways behind a departing heavy jet/B757; if the arrival flight path will cross the takeoff path behind the heavy jet/B757 and behind the heavy jet/B757 rotation point. (See FIG 3–10–11.)

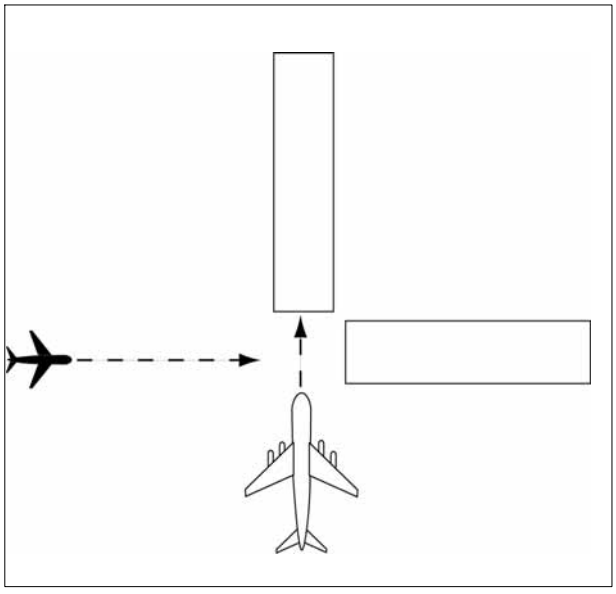
FIG 3–10–11
Intersecting Runway Separation



EXAMPLE–
"Runway niner cleared to land. Caution wake turbulence, heavy C–One Forty One departing runway one five."

2. VFR aircraft landing on a crossing runway behind an arriving heavy jet/B757 if the arrival flight path will cross. (See FIG 3–10–12.)

FIG 3–10–12
Intersecting Runway Separation



EXAMPLE–
"Runway niner cleared to land. Caution wake turbulence, Boeing Seven Fifty Seven landing runway three six."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–4 Approaches to Multiple Runways.

3–10–5. LANDING CLEARANCE

a. When issuing a clearance to land, first state the runway number followed by the landing clearance. If the landing runway is changed, controllers must preface the landing clearance with "Change to runway."

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) CLEARED TO LAND.

Or

CHANGE TO RUNWAY (number) CLEARED TO LAND.

b. Procedures.

1. Facilities without a safety logic system or facilities with the safety logic system inoperative or in the limited configuration must not clear an aircraft for a full–stop, touch–and–go, stop–and–go, option, or unrestricted low approach when a departing aircraft has been instructed to line up and wait or is holding in position on the same runway. The landing clearance may be issued once the aircraft in position has started takeoff roll.

2. Facilities using safety logic in the full core alert runway configuration may issue a landing clearance, full–stop, touch–and–go, stop–and–go, option, or unrestricted low approach to an arriving aircraft with an aircraft holding in position or taxiing to LUAW on the same runway except when reported weather conditions are less than ceiling 800 feet or visibility less than 2 miles.

c. Inform the closest aircraft that is requesting a full–stop, touch–and–go, stop–and–go, option, or unrestricted low approaches when there is traffic authorized to line up and wait on the same runway.

EXAMPLE–
"Delta One, Runway One–Eight, continue, traffic holding in position."

"Delta One, Runway One–Eight, cleared to land. Traffic holding in position."

d. USA/USN/USAF. Issue runway identifier along with surface wind when clearing an aircraft to land, touch and go, stop and go, low approach, or the option.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number), WIND (surface wind direction and velocity), CLEARED TO LAND.

NOTE–
A clearance to land means that appropriate separation on the landing runway will be ensured. A landing clearance does not relieve the pilot from compliance with any previously issued restriction.

e. Whenever a runway length has been temporarily or permanently shortened, state the word "shortened" immediately following the runway number as part of the landing clearance. This information must be issued in conjunction with the landing clearance.

1. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the landing clearance for the duration of the construction project when the runway is temporarily shortened.

2. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the landing clearance until the A/FD is updated to include the change(s) when the runway is permanently shortened.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) SHORTENED, CLEARED TO LAND.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Two-Seven shortened, cleared to land."

f. If landing clearance is temporarily withheld, insert the word "shortened" immediately after the runway number to advise the pilot to continue.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY (number) SHORTENED, CONTINUE.

EXAMPLE–
"Runway Two-Seven shortened, continue."

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-11, Airport Construction
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-12, Change in Runway Length Due to Construction

3–10–6. ANTICIPATING SEPARATION

a. Landing clearance to succeeding aircraft in a landing sequence need not be withheld if you observe the positions of the aircraft and determine that prescribed runway separation will exist when the aircraft crosses the landing threshold. Issue traffic information to the succeeding aircraft if a preceding arrival has not been previously reported and when traffic will be departing prior to their arrival.

EXAMPLE–
"American Two Forty–Five, Runway One–Eight, cleared to land, number two following a United Seven–Thirty–Seven two mile final. Traffic will depart prior to your arrival."

"American Two Forty–Five, Runway One–Eight, cleared to land. Traffic will depart prior to your arrival."

NOTE–
Landing sequence number is optional at tower facilities where the arrival sequence to the runway is established by the approach control.

b. Anticipating separation must not be applied when conducting LUAW operations, except as authorized in paragraph 3–10–5b2. Issue applicable traffic information when using this provision.

EXAMPLE–
"American Two Forty–Five, Runway One–Eight, cleared to land. Traffic will be a Boeing Seven–Fifty–Seven holding in position."

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Clear of the Runway.

3–10–7. LANDING CLEARANCE WITHOUT VISUAL OBSERVATION

When an arriving aircraft reports at a position where he/she should be seen but has not been visually observed, advise the aircraft as a part of the landing clearance that it is not in sight and restate the landing runway.

PHRASEOLOGY–
NOT IN SIGHT, RUNWAY (number) CLEARED TO LAND.

NOTE–
Aircraft observance on the CTRD satisfies the visually observed requirement.

3–10–8. WITHHOLDING LANDING CLEARANCE

Do not withhold a landing clearance indefinitely even though it appears a violation of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations has been committed. The apparent violation might be the result of an emergency situation. In any event, assist the pilot to the extent possible.

3–10–9. RUNWAY EXITING

a. Instruct aircraft where to turn-off the runway after landing, when appropriate, and advise the aircraft to hold short of a runway or taxiway if required for traffic.

PHRASEOLOGY–
TURN LEFT/RIGHT (taxiway/runway),

or

IF ABLE, TURN LEFT/RIGHT (taxiway/runway)

and if required

HOLD SHORT OF (runway).

NOTE–
Runway exiting or taxi instructions should not normally be issued to an aircraft prior to, or immediately after, touchdown.

b. Taxi instructions must be provided to the aircraft by the local controller when:

1. Compliance with ATC instructions will be required before the aircraft can change to ground control, or

2. The aircraft will be required to enter an active runway in order to taxi clear of the landing runway.

EXAMPLE–
"U.S. Air Ten Forty Two, turn right next taxiway, cross runway two one, contact ground point seven."

"U.S. Air Ten Forty Two, turn right on Alfa/next taxiway, cross Bravo, hold short of Charlie, contact ground point seven."

NOTE–
1. *An aircraft is expected to taxi clear of the runway unless otherwise directed by ATC. Pilots must not exit the landing runway on to an intersecting runway unless authorized by ATC. In the absence of ATC instructions, an aircraft should taxi clear of the landing runway by clearing the hold position marking associated with the landing runway even if that requires the aircraft to protrude into or enter another taxiway/ramp area. This does not authorize an aircraft to cross a subsequent taxiway or ramp after clearing the landing runway.*

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Clear of the Runway.

2. *The pilot is responsible for ascertaining when the aircraft is clear of the runway by clearing the runway holding position marking associated with the landing runway.*

c. Ground control and local control must protect a taxiway/runway/ramp intersection if an aircraft is required to enter that intersection to clear the landing runway.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–1–7, Use of Active Runways.

d. Request a read back of runway hold short instructions when not received from the pilot.

EXAMPLE–
"American Four Ninety–two, turn left at Taxiway Charlie, hold short of Runway 27 Right."

or

"American Four Ninety–two, turn left at Charlie, hold short of Runway 27 Right."

"American Four Ninety Two, Roger."

"American Four Ninety–two, read back hold instructions."

NOTE–
Read back hold instructions phraseology may be initiated for any point on a movement area when the controller believes the read back is necessary.

3–10–10. ALTITUDE RESTRICTED LOW APPROACH

A low approach with an altitude restriction of not less than 500 feet above the airport may be authorized except over an aircraft in takeoff position or a departure aircraft. Do not clear aircraft for restricted altitude low approaches over personnel unless airport authorities have advised these personnel that the approaches will be conducted. Advise the approaching aircraft of the location of applicable ground traffic, personnel, or equipment.

NOTE–
1. *The 500 feet restriction is a minimum. Higher altitudes should be used when warranted. For example, 1,000 feet is more appropriate for heavy aircraft operating over unprotected personnel or small aircraft on or near the runway.*

2. *This authorization includes altitude restricted low approaches over preceding landing or taxiing aircraft. Restricted low approaches are not authorized over aircraft in takeoff position or departing aircraft.*

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED LOW APPROACH AT OR ABOVE (altitude). TRAFFIC (description and location).

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–5, Vehicles/Equipment/Personnel on Runways.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–6, Traffic Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–2–1, Light Signals.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–3–3, Timely Information.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–4, Line Up and Wait (LUAW).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–3, Same Runway Separation.

3–10–11. CLOSED TRAFFIC

Approve/disapprove pilot requests to remain in closed traffic for successive operations subject to local traffic conditions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
LEFT/RIGHT (if required) CLOSED TRAFFIC APPROVED. REPORT (position if required),

or

UNABLE CLOSED TRAFFIC, (additional information as required).

NOTE–
Segregated traffic patterns for helicopters to runways and other areas may be established by letter of agreement or other local operating procedures.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–7–4 Runway Proximity.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–4 Line Up and Wait (LUAW).
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–3 Same Runway Separation.

3–10–12. OVERHEAD MANEUVER

Issue the following to arriving aircraft that will conduct an overhead maneuver:

a. Pattern altitude and direction of traffic. Omit either or both if standard or when you know the pilot is familiar with a nonstandard procedure.

PHRASEOLOGY–
PATTERN ALTITUDE (altitude). RIGHT TURNS.

b. Request for report on initial approach.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REPORT INITIAL.

c. "Break" information and request for pilot report. Specify the point of "break" only if nonstandard. Request the pilot to report "break" if required for traffic or other reasons.

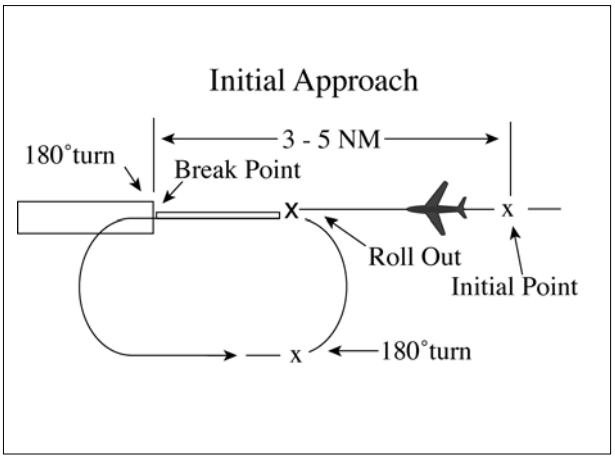
PHRASEOLOGY–
BREAK AT (specified point).

REPORT BREAK.

d. Overhead maneuver patterns are developed at airports where aircraft have an operational need to conduct the maneuver. An aircraft conducting an overhead maneuver is on VFR and the IFR flight plan is cancelled when the aircraft reaches the "initial point" on the initial approach portion of the maneuver. The existence of a standard overhead maneuver pattern does not eliminate the possible requirement for an aircraft to conform to conventional rectangular patterns if an overhead maneuver cannot be approved.

NOTE–
Aircraft operating to an airport without a functioning control tower must initiate cancellation of the IFR flight plan prior to executing the overhead maneuver or after landing.

FIG 3–10–13
Overhead Maneuver



EXAMPLE–
"Air Force Three Six Eight, Runway Six, wind zero seven zero at eight, pattern altitude six thousand, report initial."

"Air Force Three Six Eight, break at midfield, report break."

"Air Force Three Six Eight, cleared to land."

"Alfa Kilo Two Two, Runway Three One, wind three three zero at one four, right turns, report initial."

"Alfa Kilo Two Two, report break."

"Alfa Kilo Two Two, cleared to land."

e. Timely and positive controller action is required to prevent a conflict when an overhead pattern could extend into the path of a departing or a missed approach aircraft. Local procedures and/or coordination requirements should be set forth in an appropriate letter of agreement, facility directive, base flying manual etc., when the frequency of occurrence warrants.

3–10–13. SIMULATED FLAMEOUT (SFO) APPROACHES/EMERGENCY LANDING PATTERN (ELP) OPERATIONS/PRACTICE PRECAUTIONARY APPROACHES

a. Authorize military aircraft to make SFO/ELP/practice precautionary approaches if the following conditions are met:

1. A letter of agreement or local operating procedure is in effect between the military flying organization and affected ATC facility.

(a) Include specific coordination, execution, and approval procedures for the operation.

(b) The exchange or issuance of traffic information as agreed to in any interfacility letter of agreement is accomplished.

(c) Include a statement in the procedure that clarifies at which points SFOs/ELPs may/may not be terminated. (See FIG 3–10–14 and FIG 3–10–16.)

2. Traffic information regarding aircraft in radio communication with or visible to tower controllers which are operating within or adjacent to the flameout maneuvering area is provided to the SFO/ELP aircraft and other concerned aircraft.

3. The high-key altitude or practice precautionary approach maneuvering altitudes of the aircraft concerned are obtained prior to approving the approach. (See FIG 3–10–14 and FIG 3–10–16.)

NOTE–
1. *Practice precautionary/SFO/ELP approaches are authorized only for specific aircraft. Any aircraft, however, might make precautionary approaches, when engine failure is considered possible. The practice precautionary approach maneuvering area/altitudes may not conform to the standard SFO/ELP maneuvering area/altitudes.*

2. *SFO/ELP approaches generally require high descent rates. Visibility ahead and beneath the aircraft is greatly restricted.*

3. *Pattern adjustments for aircraft conducting SFOs and ELPs may impact the effectiveness of SFO and ELP training.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–8–12, Low Approach and Touch-and-Go.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 9–3–7, Simulated Flameout (SFO)/Emergency Landing Pattern (ELP) Operations.

b. For overhead SFO/ELP approaches:

1. Request a report at the entry point.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REPORT (high or low) KEY (as appropriate).

2. Request a report at low key.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REPORT LOW KEY.

3. At low key, issue low approach clearance or alternate instructions.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–8–1, Sequence/Spacing Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–1–7, Inflight Emergencies Involving Military Fighter-type Aircraft.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 9–3–7, Simulated Flameout (SFO)/Emergency Landing Pattern (ELP) Operations.

c. For straight–in simulation flameout approaches:

1. Request a position report from aircraft conducting straight–in SFO approaches.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REPORT (distance) MILE SIMULATED FLAMEOUT FINAL.

2. At the appropriate position on final (normally no closer than 3 miles), issue low approach clearance or alternate instruction. (See FIG 3–10–15.)

(SID name and number) DEPARTURE,

(transition name) TRANSITION; THEN,

AS FILED, EXCEPT CHANGE ROUTE TO READ (amended route portion).

MAINTAIN (altitude);

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

If a SID is not assigned,

CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT AS FILED,

EXCEPT CHANGE ROUTE TO READ (amended route portion).

MAINTAIN (altitude);

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared to Reynolds Airport; South Boston One Departure; then, as filed, except change route to read South Boston Victor Twenty Greensboro. Maintain eight thousand, report leaving four thousand."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport as filed, except change route to read South Boston Victor Twenty Greensboro. Maintain eight thousand, report leaving four thousand."

"Cleared to Reynolds Airport via Victor Ninety-one Albany, then as filed. Maintain six thousand."

f. In a nonradar environment specify one, two, or more fixes, as necessary, to identify the initial route of flight.

1. Specify the destination airport, when practicable, followed by the word "airport" even though it is outside controlled airspace.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT

2. When the clearance limit is a NAVAID, the type of NAVAID must follow the NAVAID name.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO (NAVAID name and type)

3. When the clearance limit is an intersection or waypoint and the type is known, the type must follow the intersection or waypoint name.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO (intersection or waypoint name and type)

EXAMPLE–
The filed route of flight is from Hutchins V10 Emporia, thence V10N and V77 to St. Joseph. The clearance will read:
"Cleared to Watson Airport as filed via Emporia, maintain Seven Thousand."

g. Do not apply these procedures when a pilot requests a detailed clearance or to military operations conducted within ALTRV, stereo routes, operations above FL 600, and other military operations requiring special handling.

NOTE–
Departure clearance procedures and phraseology for military operations within approved altitude reservations, military operations above FL 600, and other military operations requiring special handling are contained in separate procedures in this order or in a LOA, as appropriate.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–7 ALTRV Clearance.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–14 Military Operations Above FL 600.

4–3–4. DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES

Assign departure restrictions, clearance void times, hold for release, or release times when necessary to separate departures from other traffic or to restrict or regulate the departure flow.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–3–1 Overdue Aircraft.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–4–1 Traffic Restrictions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–4–3 Traffic Resumption.

a. Clearance Void Times.

1. When issuing clearance void times at airports not served by control towers, provide alternative instructions requiring the pilots to advise ATC of their intentions no later than 30 minutes after the clearance void time if not airborne.

2. The facility delivering a clearance void time to a pilot must issue a time check.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARANCE VOID IF NOT OFF BY (clearance void time),

and if required,

IF NOT OFF BY (clearance void time), ADVISE (facility) NOT LATER THAN (time) OF INTENTIONS.

TIME (time in hours, minutes, and the nearest quarter minute).

b. Hold For Release (HFR).

1. "Hold for release" instructions must be used when necessary to inform a pilot or a controller that a departure clearance is not valid until additional instructions are received.

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Hold for Release.

2. When issuing hold for release instructions, include departure delay information.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft identification) CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT AS FILED, MAINTAIN (altitude),

and if required,

(additional instructions or information).

HOLD FOR RELEASE, EXPECT (time in hours and/or minutes) DEPARTURE DELAY.

3. When conditions allow, release the aircraft as soon as possible.

PHRASEOLOGY–
To another controller,

(aircraft identification) RELEASED.

To a flight service specialist,

ADVISE (aircraft identification) RELEASED FOR DEPARTURE.

To a pilot at an airport not served by a control tower,

(aircraft identification) RELEASED FOR DEPARTURE.

c. Release Times.

1. Release times must be issued to pilots when necessary to specify the earliest time an aircraft may depart.

NOTE–
A release time is a departure restriction issued to a pilot (either directly or through authorized relay) to separate a departing aircraft from other traffic.

2. The facility issuing a release time to a pilot must include a time check.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft identification) RELEASED FOR DEPARTURE AT (time in hours and/or minutes),

and if required,

IF NOT OFF BY (time), ADVISE (facility) NOT LATER THAN (time) OF INTENTIONS.

TIME (time in hours, minutes, and nearest quarter minute).

d. When expect departure clearance times (EDCT) are assigned through traffic management programs, excluding overriding call for release (CFR) operations as described in subparagraph e, the departure terminal must, to the extent possible, plan ground movement of aircraft destined to the affected airport(s) so that flights are sequenced to depart no earlier than 5 minutes before, and no later than 5 minutes after the EDCT. Do not release aircraft on their assigned EDCT if a ground stop (GS) applicable to that aircraft is in effect, unless approval has been received from the originator of the GS.

e. Call for Release (CFR). When CFR is in effect, release aircraft so they are airborne within a window that extends from 2 minutes prior and ends 1 minute after the assigned time, unless otherwise coordinated.

NOTE–
1. *Subparagraph (e) applies to all facilities.*

2. *Coordination may be verbal, electronic, or written.*

1. If an aircraft has begun to taxi or requests taxi in a manner consistent with meeting the EDCT, the aircraft must be released. Additional coordination is not required.

2. If an aircraft requests taxi or clearance for departure inconsistent with meeting the EDCT window, ask the pilot to verify the EDCT.

(a) If the pilot's EDCT is the same as the FAA EDCT, the aircraft is released consistent with the EDCT.

(b) If the pilot's EDCT is not the same as the FAA EDCT, refer to Trust and Verify Note below.

3. If an aircraft requests taxi too late to meet the EDCT, contact the ATCSCC through the appropriate TMU.

NOTE–
(Trust & Verify) EDCTs are revised by Air Carriers and Traffic Management for changing conditions en route or at affected airport(s). Terminal controllers' use of aircraft reported EDCT for departure sequencing should be verified with the appropriate TMU prior to departure if this can be accomplished without the aircraft incurring delay beyond the EDCT reported by the aircraft. The preferred method for verification is the Flight Schedule Monitor (FSM). If the EDCT cannot be verified without incurring additional delay, the aircraft should be released based on the pilot reported EDCT. The aircraft operator is responsible for operating in a manner consistent to meet the EDCT.

4–3–5. GROUND STOP

Do not release an aircraft if a ground stop (GS) applicable to that aircraft is in effect, without the approval of the originator of the GS.

4–3–6. DELAY SEQUENCING

When aircraft elect to take delay on the ground before departure, issue departure clearances to them in the order in which the requests for clearance were originally made if practicable.

4–3–7. FORWARD DEPARTURE DELAY INFORMATION

Inform approach control facilities and/or towers of anticipated departure delays.

4–3–8. COORDINATION WITH RECEIVING FACILITY

a. Coordinate with the receiving facility before the departure of an aircraft if the departure point is less than 15 minutes flying time from the transferring facility's boundary unless an automatic transfer of data between automated systems will occur, in which case, the flying time requirement may be reduced to 5 minutes or replaced with a mileage from the boundary parameter when mutually agreeable to both facilities.

NOTE–
Agreements requiring additional time are encouraged between facilities that need earlier coordination. However, when agreements establish mandatory radar handoff procedures, coordination needs only be effected in a timely manner prior to transfer of control.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 4, Transfer of Radar Identification, Para 5–4–1, Application.

b. The actual departure time or a subsequent strip posting time must be forwarded to the receiving facility unless assumed departure times are agreed upon and that time is within 3 minutes of the actual departure time.

4–3–9. VFR RELEASE OF IFR DEPARTURE

When an aircraft which has filed an IFR flight plan requests a VFR departure through a terminal facility, FSS, or air/ground communications station:

a. After obtaining, if necessary, approval from the facility/sector responsible for issuing the IFR clearance, you may authorize an IFR flight planned aircraft to depart VFR. Inform the pilot of the proper frequency and, if appropriate, where or when to contact the facility responsible for issuing the clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY–
VFR DEPARTURE AUTHORIZED. CONTACT (facility) ON (frequency) AT (location or time if required) FOR CLEARANCE.

b. If the facility/sector responsible for issuing the clearance is unable to issue a clearance, inform the pilot, and suggest that the delay be taken on the ground. If the pilot insists upon taking off VFR and obtaining an IFR clearance in the air, inform the facility/sector holding the flight plan of the pilot's intentions and, if possible, the VFR departure time.

4–3–10. FORWARDING DEPARTURE TIMES

TERMINAL

Unless alternate procedures are prescribed in a letter of agreement or automatic departure messages are being transmitted between automated facilities, forward departure times to the facility from which you received the clearance and also to the terminal departure controller when that position is involved in the departure sequence.

NOTE–
1. *Letters of agreement prescribing assumed departure times or mandatory radar handoff procedures are alternatives for providing equivalent procedures.*

2. *The letters "DM" flashing in the data block signify unsuccessful transmission of a departure message.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11–2–6, Automatic Acquisition/Termination Areas.

Section 8. Approach Clearance Procedures

4–8–1. APPROACH CLEARANCE

a. Clear aircraft for "standard" or "special" instrument approach procedures only. To require an aircraft to execute a particular instrument approach procedure, specify in the approach clearance the name of the approach as published on the approach chart. Where more than one procedure is published on a single chart and a specific procedure is to be flown, amend the approach clearance to specify execution of the specific approach to be flown. If only one instrument approach of a particular type is published, the approach needs not be identified by the runway reference. An aircraft conducting an ILS or LDA approach when the glideslope is reported out of service must be advised at the time an approach clearance is issued unless the title of the published approach procedure allows (for example, ILS Rwy 05 or LOC Rwy 05). Standard instrument approach procedures (SIAP) must begin at an initial approach fix (IAF) or an intermediate fix (IF) if there is not an IAF. Where adequate radar coverage exists, radar facilities may vector aircraft to the final approach course, or clear an aircraft to any fix 3 NM or more prior to the FAF along the final approach course in accordance with Paragraph 5-9-1, Vectors to Final Approach Course, and Paragraph 5-9-2, Final Approach Course Interception.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED (type) APPROACH.

(For a straight-in-approach– IFR),
CLEARED STRAIGHT-IN (type) APPROACH.

(To authorize a pilot to execute his/her choice of instrument approach),

CLEARED APPROACH.

(Where more than one procedure is published on a single chart and a specific procedure is to be flown),

CLEARED (specific procedure to be flown) APPROACH.

(To authorize a pilot to execute an ILS or an LDA approach when the glideslope is out of service)

CLEARED (ILS/LDA) APPROACH, GLIDESLOPE UNUSABLE.
(When the title of the approach procedure contains "or LOC")

CLEARED LOCALIZER APPROACH

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared Approach."
"Cleared V–O–R Approach."
"Cleared V–O–R Runway Three-Six Approach."
"Cleared L–D–A Approach."
"Cleared L–D–A Runway Three-Six Approach."
"Cleared I–L–S Approach."
"Cleared Localizer Approach."
"Cleared Localizer Back Course Runway One-Three Approach."
"Cleared RNAV Z Runway Two-Two Approach."
"Cleared GPS Runway Two Approach."
"Cleared BRANCH ONE Arrival and RNAV Runway One-Three Approach."
"Cleared I–L–S Runway Three-Six Approach, glideslope unusable."
"Cleared S–D–F Approach."
"Cleared G–L–S Approach."

NOTE–
1. *Clearances authorizing instrument approaches are issued on the basis that, if visual contact with the ground is made before the approach is completed, the entire approach procedure will be followed unless the pilot receives approval for a contact approach, is cleared for a visual approach, or cancels their IFR flight plan.*

2. *Approach clearances are issued based on known traffic. The receipt of an approach clearance does not relieve the pilot of his/her responsibility to comply with applicable Parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations and the notations on instrument approach charts which levy on the pilot the responsibility to comply with or act on an instruction; e.g., "Straight-in minima not authorized at night," "Procedure not authorized when glideslope/glidepath not used," "Use of procedure limited to aircraft authorized to use airport," or "Procedure not authorized at night."*

3. *In some cases, the name of the approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, other than the localizer on an ILS is inoperative. Where more than one procedure to the same runway is published on a single chart, each must adhere to all final approach guidance contained on that chart, even though each procedure will be treated as a separate entity when authorized by ATC. The use of alphabetical identifiers in the approach name with a letter from the end of the alphabet; for example, X, Y, Z, such as "HI TACAN Z Rwy 6L or HI TACAN Y Rwy 6L," or "RNAV (GPS) Z Rwy*

04 or RNAV (GPS) Y Rwy 04," denotes multiple straight-in approaches to the same runway that use the same approach aid. Alphabetical suffixes with a letter from the beginning of the alphabet; for example, A, B, C, denote a procedure that does not meet the criteria for straight-in landing minimums authorization.

4. *14 CFR Section 91.175(j) requires a pilot to receive a clearance to conduct a procedure turn when vectored to a final approach course or fix, conducting a timed approach, or when the procedure specifies "NO PT."*

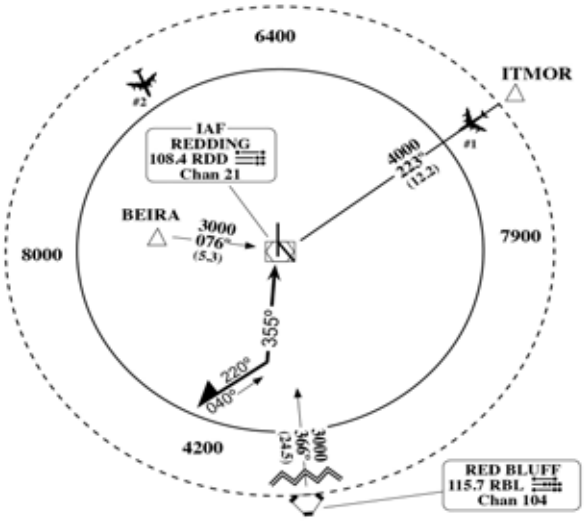
5. *An aircraft which has been cleared to a holding fix and prior to reaching that fix is issued a clearance for an approach, but not issued a revised routing; i.e., "proceed direct to . . .." may be expected to proceed via the last assigned route, a feeder route (if one is published on the approach chart), and then to commence the approach as published. If, by following the route of flight to the holding fix, the aircraft would overfly an IAF or the fix associated with the beginning of a feeder route to be used, the aircraft is expected to commence the approach using the published feeder route to the IAF or from the IAF as appropriate; i.e., the aircraft would not be expected to overfly and return to the IAF or feeder route.*

6. *Approach name items contained within parenthesis; e.g., RNAV (GPS) Rwy 04, are not included in approach clearance phraseology.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 8260.3, United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS).

b. For aircraft operating on unpublished routes, issue the approach clearance only after the aircraft is: (See FIG 4–8–1.)

FIG 4–8–1
Approach Clearance Example



1. Established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure, or

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft 1: *The aircraft is established on a segment of a published route at 5,000 feet. "Cleared V-O-R Runway Three Four Approach."*

2. Assigned an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft 2: *The aircraft is inbound to the VOR on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along this flight path to the VOR is 5,000 feet. "Cross the Redding V-O-R at or above five thousand, cleared V-O-R Runway Three Four Approach."*

NOTE–
1. *The altitude assigned must assure IFR obstruction clearance from the point at which the approach clearance is issued until established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.*

2. *If the altitude assignment is VFR-on-top, it is conceivable that the pilot may elect to remain high until arrival over the final approach fix which may require the pilot to circle to descend so as to cross the final approach fix at an altitude that would permit landing.*

c. Except for visual approaches, do not clear an aircraft direct to the FAF unless it is also an IAF, wherein the aircraft is expected to execute the depicted procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of procedure turn.

d. For RNAV-equipped aircraft operating on unpublished routes, issue approach clearance for conventional or RNAV SIAP only after the aircraft is:

1. Established on a heading or course direct to the IAF at an intercept angle not greater than 90 degrees and is assigned an altitude in accordance with b2. Radar monitoring is required for RNAV (RNP) approaches when no procedure turn or hold–in–lieu of procedure turn will be executed.

2. Established on a heading or course direct to the IF at an angle not greater than 90 degrees, provided the following conditions are met:

(a) Assign an altitude in accordance with b2 that will permit a normal descent to the FAF.

NOTE–
Controllers should expect aircraft to descend at approximately 150-300 feet per nautical mile when applying guidance in subpara d2(a).

(b) Radar monitoring is provided to the IF.

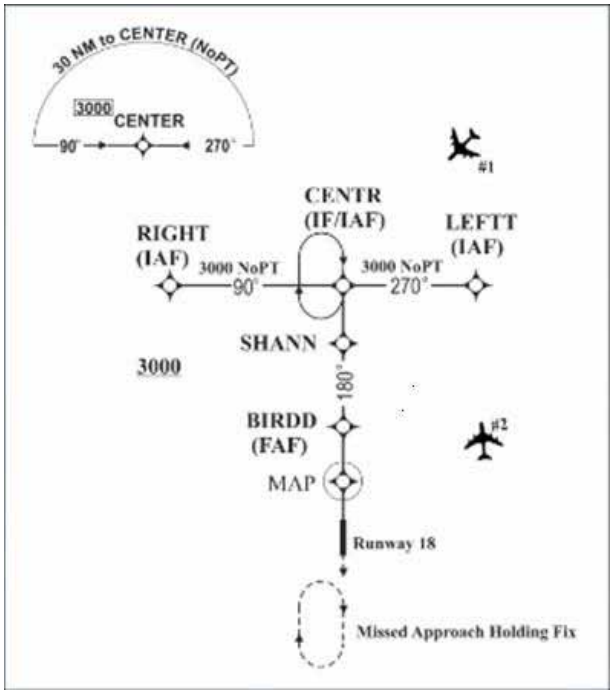
(c) The SIAP must identify the intermediate fix with the letters "IF."

(d) For procedures where an IAF is published, the pilot is advised to expect clearance to the IF at least 5 miles from the fix.

3. Established on a heading or course direct to a fix between the IF and FAF, in accordance with Paragraph 5-9-1, Vectors to Final Approach Course, and Paragraph 5-9-2, Final Approach Course Interception. (See FIG 4–8–2 .)

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.65, Par 5-6-2, Methods
FAAO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals

FIG 4–8–2
Approach Clearance Example
For RNAV Aircraft



EXAMPLE–
Aircraft 1 *can be cleared direct to CENTR. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. If a hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern is depicted and a straight-in area is not defined (for example, " No PT" indicated at the fix), the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a hold-in-lieu procedure turn. "Cleared direct CENTR, maintain at or above three thousand until CENTR, cleared straight-in RNAV Runway One Eight approach."*

Aircraft 2 *cannot be cleared direct to CENTR unless the aircraft is allowed to execute the hold-in-lieu-of procedure turn. The intercept angle at that IF/IAF is greater than 90 degrees. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct CENTR, maintain at or above three thousand until CENTR, cleared RNAV Runway One Eight approach." The pilot is expected to proceed direct CENTR and execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn.*

Aircraft 2 *can be cleared direct LEFTT. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct LEFTT, maintain at or above three thousand until LEFTT, cleared RNAV One-Eight approach." The pilot does not have to be cleared for a straight-in approach since no hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern is depicted at LEFTT.*

Aircraft 1 *is more than 5 miles from SHANN. SHANN is a step down fix between the IF (CENTR) and the FAF. To clear Aircraft 1 to SHANN, ATC must ensure the intercept angle for the intermediate segment at SHANN is not greater than 30 degrees as described in paragraphs 5-9-2 and must be cleared to an altitude that will allow a normal descent to the FAF "Expect vectors to SHANN for RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals

e. For both RNAV and conventional approaches, intercept angles greater than 90 degrees may be used when a procedure turn, a hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern, or arrival holding is depicted and the pilot will execute the procedure. If a procedure turn, hold-in-lieu of procedure turn, or arrival holding pattern is depicted and the angle of intercept is 90 degrees or less, the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of procedure turn. (See FIG 4–8–3)

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED STRAIGHT-IN (type) APPROACH

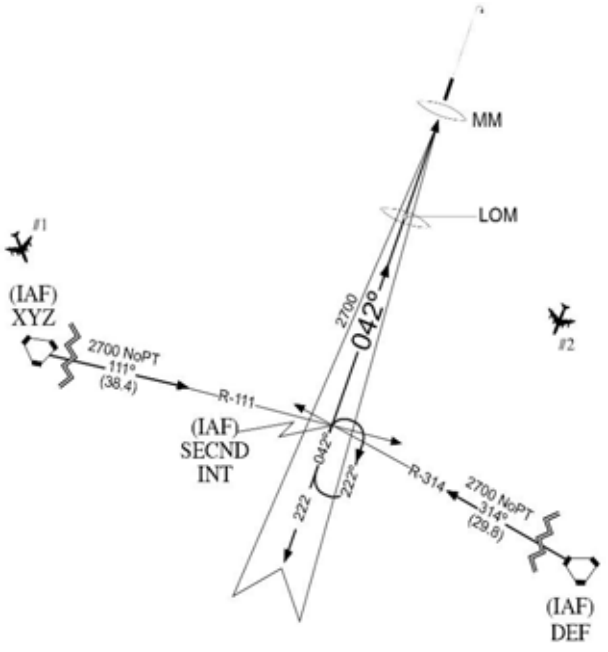
NOTE–
1. *Restate "cleared straight-in" in the approach clearance even if the pilot was advised earlier to expect a straight-in approach.*

2. *Some approach charts have an arrival holding pattern depicted at the IAF using a "thin line" holding symbol. It is charted where holding is frequently required prior to starting the approach procedure so that detailed holding instructions are not required. The arrival holding pattern is not authorized unless assigned by ATC.*

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared direct SECND, maintain at or above three thousand until SECND, cleared straight-in ILS Runway One-Eight approach."

REFERENCE–
AIM, Paragraph 5-4-5, Instrument Approach Procedure Charts
AIM, Paragraph 5-4-9, Procedure Turn and Hold-in-Lieu of Procedure Turn

FIG 4–8–3
Approach Clearance Example for RNAV Aircraft On a Conventional Approach



EXAMPLE–
Aircraft 1 can be cleared direct to XYZ VORTAC, and SECND because the intercept angle is 90 degrees or less.

Aircraft 2 cannot be cleared to XYZ VORTAC because the intercept angle is greater than 90 degrees.

Aircraft 2 can be cleared to SECND if allowed to execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern.

f. Clear RNAV-equipped aircraft conducting RNAV instrument approach procedures that contain radius to fix (RF) legs:

1. Via published transitions, or

2. On a heading or course direct to the IAF/IF when a hold-in-lieu of procedure turn is published and the pilot will execute the procedure, or

3. On a heading or course direct to the IAF/IF, at intercept angles no greater than 90 degrees and the distance to the waypoint beginning the RF leg is 6NM or greater, or

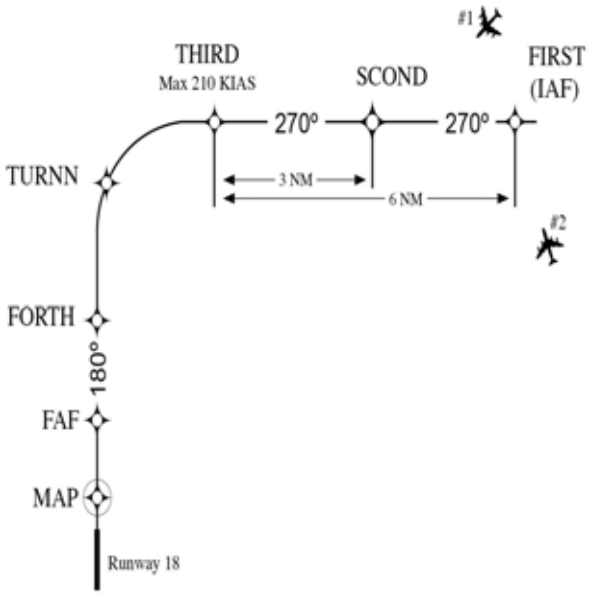
4. With radar monitoring, on a heading or course direct to any waypoint 3 miles or more from the waypoint that begins the RF leg, at an intercept angle not greater than 30 degrees. (See FIG 4-8-4.)

NOTE–
1. *RNAV approaches (containing RF legs) that commence at 10,000 feet or above require special procedures that will be site specific and specified in a facility directive.*

2. *An RF leg is defined as a curved segment indicating a constant radius circular path about a defined turn center that begins at a waypoint. RF legs may have maximum airspeeds charted for procedural containment that must be followed.*

3. *If an aircraft is vectored off the procedure, expect the aircraft to request a return to an IAF.*

FIG 4–8–4
Radius to Fix (RF) and Track to Fix (TF)



NOTE–
1. *The segment between THIRD and FORTH in FIG 4-8-4 is an RF leg.*

2. *The straight segments between waypoints in FIG 4-8-4 are TF legs.*

3. *Aircraft cannot be vectored or cleared direct THIRD because that waypoint begins an RF leg.*

4. *Aircraft cannot be vectored or cleared to TURNN or vectored to intercept the approach segment at any point between THIRD and FORTH because this is the RF leg.*

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft 1 can be cleared to SCOND because the distance

to THIRD, where the RF leg begins is 3NM or greater and the intercept angle will be 30 degrees or less and is radar monitored.

Aircraft 2 can be cleared direct to FIRST because the intercept angle is 90 degrees or less and the distance from FIRST to THIRD is 6NM or greater.

g. Except when applying radar procedures, timed or visual approaches, clear an aircraft for an approach to an airport when the preceding aircraft has landed or canceled IFR flight plan.

h. Where instrument approaches require radar monitoring and radar services are not available, do not use the phraseology "cleared approach," which allows the pilot his/her choice of instrument approaches.

i. Where a terminal arrival area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches, use the procedures under subpara b1 and b2 above. (See FIG 4–8–5.)

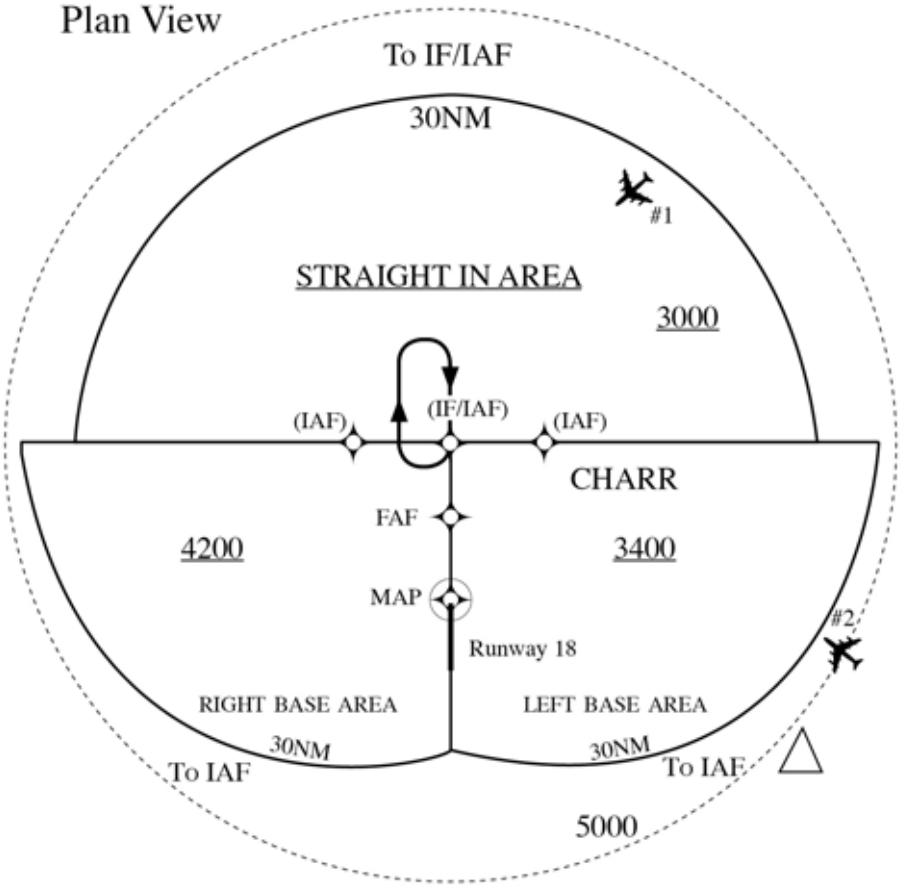
EXAMPLE–

Aircraft 1: *The aircraft has crossed the TAA boundary and is therefore established on a segment of the approach. "Cleared R–NAV Runway One Eight Approach."*

Aircraft 2: *The aircraft is inbound to the CHARR IAF on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along this flight path to the IAF is 5,000 feet. "Cleared direct CHARR, maintain at or above five thousand until entering the TAA, cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."*

FIG 4–8–5

Basic "T" and TAA Design



j. For GPS UNRELIABLE NOTAMs, inform pilots requesting a GPS or RNAV approach that GPS is unreliable and clear the aircraft for the approach. This advisory may be omitted if contained in the Automated Terminal Information System (ATIS) broadcast.

k. For pilot reported GPS anomalies, advise subsequent aircraft requesting a GPS or RNAV approach that GPS is unreliable and clear the aircraft for the approach. This advisory may be discontinued after 15 minutes if no subsequent reports are received.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–10, NAVAID Malfunctions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–7–12, Airport Conditions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED (approach), GPS UNRELIABLE.

l. For Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) UNAVAILABLE NOTAMs, advise aircraft requesting a GPS or RNAV approach that WAAS is unavailable and clear the aircraft for the approach. This advisory may be omitted if contained in the ATIS broadcast.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED (approach), WAAS UNAVAILABLE.

NOTE–
1. *WAAS UNAVAILABLE NOTAMs indicate a failure of a WAAS system component. GPS/WAAS equipment reverts to GPS–only operation and satisfies the requirements for basic GPS equipment.*

2. *WAAS UNRELIABLE NOTAMs indicate predictive coverage, are published for pilot preflight planning, and do not require any controller action.*

4–8–2. CLEARANCE LIMIT

Issue approach or other clearances, as required, specifying the destination airport as the clearance limit if airport traffic control service is not provided even though this is a repetition of the initial clearance.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO (destination) AIRPORT

4–8–3. RELAYED APPROACH CLEARANCE

TERMINAL

Include the weather report, when it is required and available, when an approach clearance is relayed through a communication station other than an air carrier company radio. You may do this by telling the station to issue current weather.

4–8–4. ALTITUDE ASSIGNMENT FOR MILITARY HIGH ALTITUDE INSTRUMENT APPROACHES

Altitudes above those shown on the high altitude instruction approach procedures chart may be specified when required for separation.

NOTE–
To preclude the possibility of aircraft exceeding rate-of-descent or airspeed limitations, the maximum altitudes which may be assigned for any portion of the high altitude instrument approach procedure will be determined through coordination between the ATC facility concerned and the military authority which originated the high altitude instrument approach procedure.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–7–5, Military Turbojet En Route Descent.

4–8–5. SPECIFYING ALTITUDE

Specify in the approach clearance the altitude shown in the approach procedures when adherence to that altitude is required for separation. When vertical separation will be provided from other aircraft by pilot adherence to the prescribed maximum, minimum, or mandatory altitudes, the controller may omit specifying the altitude in the approach clearance.

NOTE–
Use FAA or NGA instrument approach procedures charts appropriate for the aircraft executing the approach.

4–8–6. CIRCLING APPROACH

a. Circling approach instructions may only be given for aircraft landing at airports with operational control towers.

b. Include in the approach clearance instructions to circle to the runway in use if landing will be made on a runway other than that aligned with the direction of instrument approach. When the direction of the circling maneuver in relation to the airport/runway is required, state the direction (eight cardinal compass points) and specify a left or right base/downwind leg as appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CIRCLE TO RUNWAY (number),

or

CIRCLE (direction using eight cardinal compass points) OF THE AIRPORT/RUNWAY FOR A LEFT/RIGHT BASE/DOWNWIND TO RUNWAY (number).

NOTE–
Where standard instrument approach procedures (SIAPs) authorize circling approaches, they provide a basic minimum of 300 feet of obstacle clearance at the MDA within the circling area considered. The dimensions of these areas, expressed in distances from the runways, vary for the different approach categories of aircraft. In some cases a SIAP may otherwise restrict circling approach maneuvers.

c. Do not issue clearances, such as "extend downwind leg," which might cause an aircraft to exceed the circling approach area distance from the runways within which required circling approach obstacle clearance is assured.

4–8–7. SIDE–STEP MANEUVER

TERMINAL

Side-step Maneuver. When authorized by an instrument approach procedure, you may clear an aircraft for an approach to one runway and inform the aircraft that landing will be made on a parallel runway.

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared I–L–S Runway seven left approach. Side-step to runway seven right."

NOTE–
Side-step maneuvers require higher weather minima/MDA. These higher minima/MDA are published on the instrument approach charts.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–3–2, Closed/Unsafe Runway Information.
P/CG Term– Side–step Maneuver.

4–8–8. COMMUNICATIONS RELEASE

If an IFR aircraft intends to land at an airport not served by a tower or FSS, approve a change to the advisory service frequency when you no longer require direct communications.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CHANGE TO ADVISORY FREQUENCY APPROVED.

NOTE–
An expeditious frequency change permits the aircraft to receive timely local airport traffic information in accordance with AC 90–42, Traffic Advisory Practices at Airports Without Operating Control Towers.

4–8–9. MISSED APPROACH

Except in the case of a VFR aircraft practicing an instrument approach, an approach clearance automatically authorizes the aircraft to execute the missed approach procedure depicted for the instrument approach being flown. An alternate missed approach procedure as published on the appropriate FAA Form 8260 or appropriate military form may be assigned when necessary. Once an aircraft commences a missed approach, it may be radar vectored.

NOTE–
1. *Alternate missed approach procedures are published on the appropriate FAA Form 8260 or appropriate military form and require a detailed clearance when they are issued to the pilot.*

2. *In the event of a missed approach involving a turn, unless otherwise cleared, the pilot will proceed to the missed approach point before starting that turn.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–8–1, Practice Approaches.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–6–3, Vectors Below Minimum Altitude.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–8–3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures.
FAAO 8260.19, Flight Procedures and Airspace, Paras 404 and 815.
FAAO 8260.3, United States Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS), Paras 275, 278, 943, 957, and 997.

4–8–10. APPROACH INFORMATION

Specify the following in the approach clearance when the pilot says he/she is unfamiliar with the procedure:

a. Initial approach altitude.

b. Direction and distance from the holding fix within which procedure turn is to be completed.

c. Altitude at which the procedure turn is to be made.

d. Final approach course and altitude.

e. Missed approach procedures if considered necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY–
INITIAL APPROACH AT (altitude), PROCEDURE TURN AT (altitude), (number) MINUTES/MILES (direction), FINAL APPROACH ON (name of NAVAID) (specified) COURSE/RADIAL/AZIMUTH AT (altitude).

4–8–11. PRACTICE APPROACHES

Except for military aircraft operating at military airfields, ensure that neither VFR nor IFR practice approaches disrupt the flow of other arriving and departing IFR or VFR aircraft. Authorize, withdraw

authorization, or refuse to authorize practice approaches as traffic conditions require. Normally, approaches in progress should not be terminated.

NOTE–
The priority afforded other aircraft over practice instrument approaches is not intended to be so rigidly applied that it causes grossly inefficient application of services.

a. Separation.

1. IFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches must be afforded standard separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 minima until:

(a) The aircraft lands, and the flight is terminated, or

(b) The pilot cancels the flight plan.

2. Where procedures require application of IFR separation to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, standard IFR separation in accordance with Chapter 3, Chapter 4, Chapter 5, Chapter 6, and Chapter 7 must be provided. Controller responsibility for separation begins at the point where the approach clearance becomes effective. Except for heavy aircraft/B757, 500 feet vertical separation may be applied between VFR aircraft and between a VFR and an IFR aircraft.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 6–4–4, Practice Instrument Approaches.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–4–5, Practice Instrument Approaches.

3. Where separation services are not provided to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, the controller must;

(a) Instruct the pilot to maintain VFR.

(b) Advise the pilot that separation services are not provided.

PHRASEOLOGY–
"(Aircraft identification) MAINTAIN VFR, PRACTICE APPROACH APPROVED, NO SEPARATION SERVICES PROVIDED."

(c) Provide traffic information or advise the pilot to contact the appropriate facility.

4. If an altitude is assigned, including at or above/below altitudes, the altitude specified must meet MVA, minimum safe altitude, or minimum IFR altitude criteria.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–7–5, Altitude Assignments.

5. All VFR aircraft must be instructed to maintain VFR on initial contact or as soon as possible thereafter.

NOTE–
This advisory is intended to remind the pilot that even though ATC is providing IFR-type instructions, the pilot is responsible for compliance with the applicable parts of the CFR governing VFR flight.

b. Missed Approaches.

1. Unless alternate instructions have been issued, IFR aircraft are automatically authorized to execute the missed approach depicted for the instrument approach being flown.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–8–9, Missed Approach.

2. VFR aircraft are not automatically authorized to execute the missed approach procedure. This authorization must be specifically requested by the pilot and approved by the controller. When a missed approach has been approved, separation must be provided throughout the missed approach.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–2–1, Visual Separation.

4–8–12. LOW APPROACH AND TOUCH-AND-GO

Consider an aircraft cleared for a touch-and-go, low approach, or practice approach as an arriving aircraft until that aircraft touches down or crosses the landing threshold; thereafter, consider the aircraft as a departing aircraft. Before the aircraft begins its final descent, issue the appropriate departure instructions the pilot is to follow upon completion of the approach (in accordance with para 4–3–2, Departure Clearances). Climb-out instructions must include a specific heading or a route of flight and altitude, except when the aircraft will maintain VFR and contact the tower.

EXAMPLE–
"After completing low approach, climb and maintain six thousand. Turn right, heading three six zero."

"Maintain VFR, contact tower."

(Issue other instructions as appropriate.)

NOTE–
Climb-out instructions may be omitted after the first approach if instructions remain the same.

Section 4. Transfer of Radar Identification

5–4–1. APPLICATION

To provide continuous radar service to an aircraft and facilitate a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic, it is often necessary to transfer radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another. This section describes the terms, methods, and responsibilities associated with this task. Interfacility and intrafacility transfers of radar identification must be accomplished in all areas of radar surveillance except where it is not operationally feasible. Where such constraints exist, they must be:

a. Covered in letters of agreement which clearly state that control will not be based upon a radar handoff, or

b. Coordinated by the transferring and receiving controllers for a specified period of time.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–3–8 Coordination with Receiving Facility.

5–4–2. TERMS

a. *Handoff.* An action taken to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft from one controller to another controller if the aircraft will enter the receiving controller's airspace and radio communications with the aircraft will be transferred.

b. *Radar Contact.* The term used to inform the controller initiating a handoff that the aircraft is identified and approval is granted for the aircraft to enter the receiving controller's airspace.

c. *Point Out.* A physical or automated action taken by a controller to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft to another controller if the aircraft will or may enter the airspace or protected airspace of another controller and radio communications will not be transferred.

d. *Point Out Approved.* The term used to inform the controller initiating a point out that the aircraft is identified and that approval is granted for the aircraft to enter the receiving controller's airspace, as coordinated, without a communications transfer or the appropriate automated system response.

e. *Traffic.* A term used to transfer radar identification of an aircraft to another controller for the purpose of coordinating separation action. Traffic is normally issued:

1. In response to a handoff or point out;

2. In anticipation of a handoff or point out; or

3. In conjunction with a request for control of an aircraft.

f. *Traffic Observed.* The term used to inform the controller issuing the traffic restrictions that the traffic is identified and that the restrictions issued are understood and will be complied with.

5–4–3. METHODS

a. Transfer the radar identification of an aircraft by at least one of the following methods:

1. Physically point to the target on the receiving controller's display.

2. Use landline voice communications.

3. Use automation capabilities.

NOTE–
EN ROUTE. Interfacility handoff capabilities are available that can be manually initiated and accepted when operating on the backup RDP while FDP is available. The backup RDP by itself does not have the capabilities for interfacility handoffs. Therefore, handoffs between facilities must be made via landline voice communications when operating with the backup RDP only.

4. *TERMINAL.* Use the "Modify" or "Quick Look" functions for data transfer between the TRACON and tower cab only if specific procedures are established in a facility directive. The local controller has the responsibility to determine whether or not conditions are adequate for the use of ARTS/STARS data on the BRITE/DBRITE/TDW.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11–2–4, Use of Modify and Quick Look Functions.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11–8–4, Use of Stars Quick Look Functions.

b. When making a handoff, point-out, or issuing traffic restrictions, relay information to the receiving controller in the following order:

1. The position of the target relative to a fix, map symbol, or radar target known and displayed by both

the receiving and transferring controller. Mileage from the reference point may be omitted when relaying the position of a target if a full data block associated with the target has been forced on the receiving controller's radar display.

EXAMPLE–
"Point out, Southwest of Richmond VOR . . .."

2. The aircraft identification, as follows:

(a) The aircraft call sign, or

(b) The discrete beacon code of the aircraft during interfacility point-outs only, if both the receiving and the transferring controllers agree.

NOTE–
Acceptance of a point-out using the discrete beacon code as the aircraft's identification constitutes agreement.

3. The assigned altitude, appropriate restrictions, and information that the aircraft is climbing or descending, if applicable, except when inter/intrafacility directives ensure that the altitude information will be known by the receiving controller.

NOTE–
1. *When physically pointing to the target, you do not have to state the aircraft position.*

2. *Those en route facilities using host software that provides capability for passing interim altitude must include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.*

4. Advise the receiving controller of pertinent information not contained in the data block or available flight data unless covered in an LOA or facility directive. Pertinent information may include:

(a) Assigned heading.

(b) Speed/altitude restrictions.

(c) Observed track or deviation from the last route clearance.

(d) Any other pertinent information.

PHRASEOLOGY–
HANDOFF/POINT-OUT/TRAFFIC (aircraft position) (aircraft ID),

or

(discrete beacon code point-out only) (altitude, restrictions, and other pertinent information, if applicable).

c. When receiving a handoff, point-out, or traffic restrictions, respond to the transferring controller as follows:

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Aircraft ID) (restrictions, if applicable) RADAR CONTACT,

or

(aircraft ID or discrete beacon code) (restrictions, if applicable) POINT-OUT APPROVED,

or

TRAFFIC OBSERVED,

or

UNABLE (appropriate information, as required).

d. If any doubt as to target identification exists after attempting confirmation in accordance with this section, apply the provisions of para 5–3–5, Questionable Identification.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–17, Validation of Mode C Readout.

5–4–4. TRAFFIC

a. When using the term "traffic" for coordinating separation, the controller issuing traffic must issue appropriate restrictions.

b. The controller accepting the restrictions must be responsible to ensure that approved separation is maintained between the involved aircraft.

5–4–5. TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

The transferring controller must:

a. Complete a radar handoff prior to an aircraft's entering the airspace delegated to the receiving controller.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–14, Coordinate Use of Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–15, Control Transfer.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–6, Receiving Controller Handoff.

b. Verbally obtain the receiving controller's approval prior to making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, speed, or data block information while the handoff is being initiated or after acceptance, unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

NOTE–
Those en route facilities using host software that provides capability for passing interim altitude must include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

c. Ensure that, prior to transferring communications:

1. Potential violations of adjacent airspace and potential conflicts between aircraft in their own area of jurisdiction are resolved.

2. Necessary coordination has been accomplished with all controllers through whose area of jurisdiction the aircraft will pass prior to entering the receiving controller's area of jurisdiction, except when such coordination is the receiving controller's responsibility as stated in para 5–4–6, Receiving Controller Handoff, and unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

3. Restrictions issued to ensure separation are passed to the receiving controller.

d. After transferring communications, continue to comply with the requirements of subparas c1 and 2.

e. Comply with restrictions issued by the receiving controller unless otherwise coordinated.

f. Comply with the provisions of para 2–1–17, Radio Communications Transfer, subparas a and b. To the extent possible, transfer communications when the transfer of radar identification has been accepted.

NOTE–
Before the ARTS/STARS "modify/quick look" function is used to transfer radar identification, a facility directive which specifies communication transfer points is required.

g. Advise the receiving controller of pertinent information not contained in the data block or flight progress strip unless covered in a LOA or facility directive. Pertinent information includes:

1. Assigned heading.

2. Air speed restrictions.

3. Altitude information issued.

4. Observed track or deviation from the last route clearance.

5. The beacon code if different from that normally used or previously coordinated.

6. Any other pertinent information.

h. Ensure that the data block is associated with the appropriate target.

i. Initiate verbal coordination to verify the position of primary or nondiscrete targets when using the automated handoff functions except for intrafacility handoffs using single-sensor systems or multisensor systems operating in a mosaic RDP mode.

j. Initiate verbal coordination before transferring control of a track when "CST," "FAIL," "NONE," "NB," "NX," "IF," "NT", or "TRK" is displayed in the data block.

k. Advise the receiving controller that radar monitoring is required when the aircraft is on a direct route initiated by ATC that exceeds usable NAVAID distances.

l. Issue restrictions to the receiving controller which are necessary to maintain separation from other aircraft within your area of jurisdiction before releasing control of the aircraft.

m. Consider the target being transferred as identified on the receiving controller's display when the receiving controller acknowledges receipt verbally or has accepted an automated handoff.

n. Accomplish the necessary coordination with any intervening controllers whose area of jurisdiction is affected by the receiving controller's delay in the climb or the descent of an aircraft through the vertical limits of your area of jurisdiction when the receiving controller advises you of that delay before accepting the transfer of radar identification unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

5–4–6. RECEIVING CONTROLLER HANDOFF

The receiving controller must:

a. Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an appropriate association between an automated data block and the target being transferred before accepting a handoff.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–14 Coordinate Use of Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–15 Control Transfer.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–5 Transferring Controller Handoff.

b. Issue restrictions that are needed for the aircraft to enter your sector safely before accepting the handoff.

c. Comply with restrictions issued by the initiating controller unless otherwise coordinated.

d. Before you issue control instructions directly to an aircraft that is within another controller's area of jurisdiction that will change that aircraft's heading, route, speed, altitude, or beacon code, ensure that coordination has been accomplished with each of the controllers listed below whose area of jurisdiction is affected by those instructions unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive:

NOTE–
Those en route facilities using host software that provides capability for passing interim altitude must include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

1. The controller within whose area of jurisdiction the control instructions will be issued.

2. Any intervening controller(s) through whose area of jurisdiction the aircraft will pass.

e. After accepting a handoff from another controller, confirm the identity of primary target by advising the aircraft of its position, and of a beacon target by observing a code change, an "ident" reply, or a "standby" squawk unless one of these was used during handoff. These provisions do not apply at those towers and GCAs which have been delegated the responsibility for providing radar separation within designated areas by the parent approach control facility and the aircraft identification is assured by sequencing or positioning prior to the handoff.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–5, Approach Separation Responsibility.

f. When using appropriate equipment, consider a discrete beacon target's identity to be confirmed when:

1. The data block associated with the target being handed off indicates the computer assigned discrete beacon code is being received, or

2. You observe the deletion of a discrete code that was displayed in the data block, or

NOTE–
When the aircraft generated discrete beacon code does not match the computer assigned beacon code, the code generated will be displayed in the data block. When the aircraft changes to the assigned discrete code, the code disappears from the data block. In this instance, the observance of code removal from the data block satisfies confirmation requirements.

3. You observe the numeric display of a discrete code that an aircraft has been instructed to squawk or reports squawking.

g. Initiate verbal coordination prior to accepting control of a track when "CST," "NAT," "NT," "NONE," "NB," "NX," "OLD," "OL," "AMB," "AM," "TU", or "TRK" is displayed in the data block.

1. When an automated interfacility handoff action is initiated and "AMB" or "AM" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility that a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and that declared by your ARTS/PIDP/STARS system.

2. When an automated inter–facility handoff action is initiated and "NAT," "NT," "TU", or "TRK" is displayed in the full data block, advise the other facility if a disparity exists between the position declared by their computer and the actual target position.

h. Advise the transferring controller, prior to accepting the transfer of radar identification, that you will delay the climb or the descent of an aircraft through the vertical limits of the transferring controller's area of jurisdiction, unless otherwise specified in a LOA or a facility directive.

NOTE–
Those en route facilities using HOST software that provides capability for passing interim altitude must include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

i. If you decide, *after* accepting the transfer of radar identification, to delay the aircraft's climb or descent through the vertical limits of the transferring controller's area of jurisdiction, advise the transferring controller of that decision as soon as possible. *You* now have the responsibility to ensure that the necessary coordination is accomplished with any intervening controller(s) whose area of jurisdiction is affected by that delay, unless otherwise specified in a LOA or a facility directive.

NOTE–
Those en route facilities using HOST software that provides capability for passing interim altitude must include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

5–4–7. POINT OUT

a. The transferring controller must:

1. Obtain verbal approval before permitting an aircraft to enter the receiving controller's delegated airspace. *TERMINAL.* Automated approval may be utilized in lieu of verbal, provided the appropriate automation software is operational (automated point out function), and the procedures are specified in a facility directive/LOA.

2. Obtain the receiving controller's approval before making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, speed, or data block information after the point out has been approved.

NOTE–
Those en route facilities using HOST software that provides capability for passing interim altitude must include the specific operations and procedures for use of this procedure in a LOA between the appropriate facilities.

3. Comply with restrictions issued by the receiving controller unless otherwise coordinated.

4. Be responsible for subsequent radar handoffs and communications transfer, including flight data revisions and coordination, unless otherwise agreed to by the receiving controller or as specified in a LOA.

b. The receiving controller must:

1. Ensure that the target position corresponds with the position given by the transferring controller or that there is an association between a computer data block and the target being transferred prior to approving a point out.

2. Be responsible for separation between point out aircraft and other aircraft for which he/she has separation responsibility.

3. Issue restrictions necessary to provide separation from other aircraft within his/her area of jurisdiction.

5–4–8. AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER (AIT)

Transfer radar identification, altitude control, and/or en route fourth line control information, without verbal coordination under the following conditions:

a. During radar handoff; and

b. Via information displayed in full data blocks; and

c. Within the same facility, except as provided in para 5–4–9, Interfacility Automated Information Transfer; and

d. When following procedures specified in your facility AIT directive.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–1, En Route Fourth Line Data Block Usage.

5–4–9. INTERFACILITY AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER

EN ROUTE

Transfer radar identification without verbal coordination under the following conditions:

a. During radar handoff; and

b. Via information displayed in full data blocks; and

c. On aircraft at assigned altitude in level flight; and

d. Only the first sector within the receiving facility must utilize the procedure; and

e. When following procedures specified in your facility AIT directive and LOA.

5–4–10. PREARRANGED COORDINATION

Prearranged coordination allowing aircraft under your control to enter another controller's area of jurisdiction may only be approved provided procedures are established and published in a facility directive/LOA in accordance with FAAO JO 7210.3, para 3–7–7, Prearranged Coordination.

NOTE–
Under no circumstances may one controller permit an aircraft to enter another's airspace without proper coordination. Coordination can be accomplished by several means; i.e., radar handoff, automated information transfer, verbal, point–out, and by prearranged coordination procedures identified in a facility directive that clearly describe the correct application. Airspace boundaries should not be permitted to become barriers to the efficient movement of traffic. In addition, complete coordination, awareness of traffic flow, and understanding of each position's responsibility concerning penetration of another's airspace cannot be overemphasized.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–14 Coordinate Use of Airspace.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–3 Methods.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–8 Automated Information Transfer (AIT).
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3–7–7, Prearranged Coordination.

5–4–11. EN ROUTE FOURTH LINE DATA BLOCK USAGE

a. The en route fourth line data block must be used to forward only the specified control information listed below. Any additional control information must be forwarded via other communication methods. En route fourth line data block free text area may be used by individual sector teams for recording any additional information the team deems appropriate for managing the sector, but must be removed prior to initiation of identification transfer.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–5, Transferring Controller Handoff, subpara b.

b. The en route fourth line data block area must be used for coordination purposes only in association with radar identified aircraft.

c. When automated information transfer (AIT) procedures are applied, en route fourth line usage for transfer of control information must be specifically defined within facility AIT directive.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–8, Automated Information Transfer (AIT).
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 4–3–8, Automated Information Transfer (AIT).

d. Coordination format for assigned headings must use the designation character “H” preceding a three–digit number.

EXAMPLE–
H080, H270

e. Aircraft assigned a heading until receiving a fix or joining a published route must be designated with assigned heading format followed by the fix or route.

EXAMPLE–
H080/ALB, 080/J121, PH/ALB

NOTE–
1. *The notation “PH” may be used to denote present heading.*

2. *The character “H” may be omitted as a prefix to the heading assignment only if necessary due to character field limitations, and it does not impede understanding.*

f. Aircraft authorized specific weather deviation or lateral weather deviation until able to proceed direct to a fix must be designated with the identified characters: D–deviation, L–left, R–right, N–north, E–east, S–south, W–west.

EXAMPLE–
DN, D20L, DR/ATL, D30R/ATL

g. Coordination format for assigned airspeeds must use the designation character “S” preceding a three–digit number.

NOTE–
A “+” notation may be added to denote an assigned speed at or greater than the displayed value. A “–” notation may be added to denote an assigned speed at or less than the displayed value.

EXAMPLE–
S210, S250, S250+, S280–

h. Aircraft assigned a Mach number must use the designation “M” preceding the two–digit assigned value.

EXAMPLE–
M80, M80+, M80–

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–4–11, En Route Fourth Line Data Block Usage, subpara gNOTE.

i. Aircraft authorized to conduct celestial navigation training within 30 NM of the route centerline specified within the en route clearance.

EXAMPLE–
CELNAV

j. Coordination format for aircraft requesting an altitude change must use the designation characters “RQ” preceding a three–digit number.

EXAMPLE–
RQ170, RQ410

k. Coordination format for aircraft requesting a route change must use the designation “RQ/” preceding a specific fix identifier.

EXAMPLE–
RQ/LAX, RQ/NEUTO

l. The acceptance of a handoff by the receiving controller must constitute receipt of the information contained within the en route fourth line data block. It is the responsibility of the receiving controller to advise the transferring controller if any information is not understood, or needs to be revised.

NOTE–
Due to system and character limitations the usage of these standardized entries may require additional support via facility directive in order to provide complete coordination.

m. All other control information must be coordinated via other methods.

Section 5. Radar Separation

5–5–1. APPLICATION

a. Radar separation must be applied to all RNAV aircraft operating on a random (impromptu) route at or below FL 450 and to all published Q routes in the conterminous United States.

EN ROUTE

EXCEPTION. Aircraft equipped with IFR–certified GPS systems operating on point–to–point RNAV routes within the Anchorage Air Route Traffic Control Center (ARTCC) controlled airspace (excluding oceanic airspace) where ATC surveillance coverage is not available, may be provided nonradar separation, in lieu of radar separation, when an operational advantage will be gained.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–3, Procedural Preference
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–1–2, Exceptions
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6–5–4, Minima Along Other Than Established Airways or Routes

b. Radar separation may be applied between:

1. Radar identified aircraft.

2. An aircraft taking off and another radar identified aircraft when the aircraft taking off will be radar-identified within 1 mile of the runway end.

3. A radar-identified aircraft and one not radar-identified when either is cleared to climb/descend through the altitude of the other provided:

(a) The performance of the radar system is adequate and, as a minimum, primary radar targets or ASR–9/Full Digital Radar Primary Symbol targets are being displayed on the display being used within the airspace within which radar separation is being applied; and

(b) Flight data on the aircraft not radar-identified indicate it is a type which can be expected to give adequate primary/ASR–9/Full Digital Radar Primary Symbol return in the area where separation is applied; and

(c) The airspace within which radar separation is applied is not less than the following number of miles from the edge of the radar display:

(1) When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *6 miles;*

(2) When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *10 miles*;

(3) Narrowband radar operations– *10 miles;* and

(d) Radar separation is maintained between the radar-identified aircraft and all observed primary, ASR–9/Full Digital Radar Primary Symbol, and secondary radar targets until nonradar separation is established from the aircraft not radar identified; and

(e) When the aircraft involved are on the same relative heading, the radar-identified aircraft is vectored a sufficient distance from the route of the aircraft not radar identified to assure the targets are not superimposed prior to issuing the clearance to climb/descend.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–1–2 Exceptions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–4–1 Route Use.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–3–1 Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–5–8 Additional Separation for Formation Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–5 Approach Separation Responsibility.

5–5–2. TARGET SEPARATION

a. Apply radar separation:

1. Between the centers of primary radar targets; however, do not allow a primary target to touch another primary target or a beacon control slash.

2. Between the ends of beacon control slashes.

NOTE–
At TPX–42 sites, the bracket video feature must be activated to display the beacon control slash.

3. Between the end of a beacon control slash and the center of a primary target.

4. All–digital displays. Between the centers of digitized targets. Do not allow digitized targets to touch.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–7 Simultaneous Independent ILS/MLS Approaches– Dual & Triple.

5–5–3. TARGET RESOLUTION

a. A process to ensure that correlated radar targets or digitized targets do not touch.

b. Mandatory traffic advisories and safety alerts must be issued when this procedure is used.

NOTE–
This procedure must not be provided utilizing mosaic radar systems.

c. Target resolution must be applied as follows:

1. Between the edges of two primary targets or the edges of primary digitized targets.

2. Between the end of the beacon control slash and the edge of a primary target or primary digitized target.

3. Between the ends of two beacon control slashes.

5–5–4. MINIMA

Separate aircraft by the following minima:

a. *TERMINAL*. Single Sensor ASR or Digital Terminal Automation System (DTAS):

NOTE–
Includes single sensor long range radar mode.

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *3 miles*.

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *5 miles*.

3. For single sensor ASR–9 with Mode S, when less than 60 miles from the antenna– *3 miles*.

4. For single sensor ASR–11 MSSR Beacon, when less than 60 miles from the antenna– *3 miles*.

NOTE–
Wake turbulence procedures specify increased separation minima required for certain classes of aircraft because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

b. Stage A/DARC, Terminal Mosaic/ Multi-Sensor Mode:

NOTE–
Mosaic/Multi–Sensor Mode combines radar input from 2 to 16 sites into a single picture utilizing a mosaic grid composed of radar sort boxes.

1. Below FL 600– *5 miles.*

2. At or above FL 600– *10 miles.*

3. For areas meeting all of the following conditions:

(a) Radar site adaptation is set to single sensor.

(b) Significant operational advantages can be obtained.

(c) Within 40 miles of the antenna.

(d) Below FL 180.

(e) Facility directives specifically define the area where the separation can be applied. Facility directives may specify 3 miles.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 8–2–1, Single Site Coverage Stage A Operations.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 11–8–15, Single Site Coverage ATTS Operations.

4. When transitioning from terminal to en route control, 3 miles increasing to 5 miles or greater, provided:

(a) The aircraft are on diverging routes/ courses, and/or

(b) The leading aircraft is and will remain faster than the following aircraft; and

(c) Separation constantly increasing and the first center controller will establish 5 NM or other appropriate form of separation prior to the aircraft departing the first center sector; and

(d) The procedure is covered by a letter of agreement between the facilities involved and limited to specified routes and/or sectors/positions.

c. MEARTS Mosaic Mode:

1. Below FL 600- *5 miles.*

2. At or above FL 600- *10 miles.*

3. For areas meeting all of the following conditions – *3 miles*:

(a) Radar site adaptation is set to single sensor mode.

NOTE–
1. *Single Sensor Mode displays information from the radar input of a single site.*

2. *Procedures to convert MEARTS Mosaic Mode to MEARTS Single Sensor Mode at each PVD/MDM will be established by facility directive.*

(b) Significant operational advantages can be obtained.

(c) Within 40 miles of the antenna.

(d) Below FL 180.

(e) Facility directives specifically define the area where the separation can be applied and define

the requirements for displaying the area on the controller's PVD/MDM.

4. MEARTS Mosaic Mode Utilizing Single Source Polygon (San Juan CERAP and Honolulu Control Facility only) when meeting all of the following conditions– *3 miles*:

(a) Less than 40 miles from the antenna, below FL180, and targets are from the adapted sensor.

(b) The single source polygon must be displayed on the controller's PVD/MDM.

(c) Significant operational advantages can be obtained.

(d) Facility directives specifically define the single source polygon area where the separation can be applied and specify procedures to be used.

(e) Controller must commence a transition to achieve either vertical separation or 5 mile lateral separation in the event that either target is not from the adapted sensor.

d. STARS Multi–Sensor Mode:

NOTE–
1. *In Multi–Sensor Mode, STARS displays targets as filled and unfilled boxes, depending upon the target's distance from the radar site providing the data. Since there is presently no way to identify which specific site is providing data for any given target, utilize separation standards for targets 40 or more miles from the antenna.*

2. *When operating in STARS Single Sensor Mode, if TRK appears in the data block, handle in accordance with para 5–3–7, Identification Status, subpara b, and take appropriate steps to establish nonradar separation.*

3. *TRK appears in the data block whenever the aircraft is being tracked by a radar site other than the radar currently selected. Current equipment limitations preclude a target from being displayed in the single sensor mode; however, a position symbol and data block, including altitude information, will still be displayed. Therefore, low altitude alerts must be provided in accordance with para 2–1–6, Safety Alert.*

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

e. Separate aircraft operating directly behind, or directly behind and less than 1,000 feet below, or following an aircraft conducting an instrument approach by:

NOTE–
1. *When applying wake turbulence separation criteria, directly behind means an aircraft is operating within 2,500 feet of the flight path of the leading aircraft over the surface of the earth.*

2. *Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.*

1. Heavy behind heavy– *4 miles.*

2. Large/heavy behind B757– *4 miles*.

3. Small behind B757– *5 miles.*

4. Small/large behind heavy – *5 miles.*

WAKE TURBULENCE APPLICATION

f. *TERMINAL*. In addition to subpara e, separate an aircraft landing behind another aircraft on the same runway, or one making a touch-and-go, stop-and-go, or low approach by ensuring the following minima will exist at the time the preceding aircraft is over the landing threshold:

NOTE–
Consider parallel runways less than 2,500 feet apart as a single runway because of the possible effects of wake turbulence.

1. Small behind large– *4 miles*.

2. Small behind B757– *5 miles.*

3. Small behind heavy– *6 miles.*

g. *TERMINAL*. 2.5 nautical miles (NM) separation is authorized between aircraft established on the final approach course within 10 NM of the landing runway when operating in single sensor slant range mode and aircraft remains within 40 miles of the antenna and:

1. The leading aircraft's weight class is the same or less than the trailing aircraft;

2. Heavy aircraft and the Boeing 757 are permitted to participate in the separation reduction as the trailing aircraft only;

3. An average runway occupancy time of 50 seconds or less is documented;

4. CTRDs are operational and used for quick glance references;

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–1–9, Use of Tower Radar Displays.

5. Turnoff points are visible from the control tower.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–19, Wake Turbulence.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–9–6, Same Runway Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–5–7, Passing or Diverging.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–5–9, Separation from Obstructions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–8–3, Successive or Simultaneous Departures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–9–5, Approach Separation Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–6–7, Sequencing.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–7–3, Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65 Para 7–8–3, Separation.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–4–8 , Reduced Separation on Final.

5–5–5. VERTICAL APPLICATION

Aircraft not laterally separated, may be vertically separated by one of the following methods:

a. Assign altitudes to aircraft, provided valid Mode C altitude information is monitored and the applicable separation minima is maintained at all times.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–5–1, Vertical Separation Minima.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–17, Validation of Mode C Readout.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–7–3, Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–8–3, Separation.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–9–4, Separation.

b. Assign an altitude to an aircraft after the aircraft previously at that altitude has been issued a climb/descent clearance and is observed (valid Mode C), or reports leaving the altitude.

NOTE–
1. *Consider known aircraft performance characteristics, pilot furnished and/or Mode C detected information which indicate that climb/descent will not be consistent with the rates recommended in the AIM.*

2. *It is possible that the separation minima described in para 4–5–1, Vertical Separation Minima, para 7–7–3, Separation, para 7–8–3, Separation, or para 7–9–4, Separation, might not always be maintained using subpara b. However, correct application of this procedure will ensure that aircraft are safely separated because the first aircraft must have already vacated the altitude prior to the assignment of that altitude to the second aircraft.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–3, Procedural Preference.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–5–1, Vertical Separation Minima.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–17, Validation of Mode C Readout.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6–6–1, Application.

5–5–6. EXCEPTIONS

a. Do not use Mode C to effect vertical separation with an aircraft on a cruise clearance, contact approach, or as specified in para 5–15–4, System Requirements, subpara e3.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6–6–2, Exceptions.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–4–6, Contact Approach.
P/CG Term– Cruise.

b. Assign an altitude to an aircraft only after the aircraft previously at that altitude is observed at or passing through another altitude separated from the first by the appropriate minima when:

1. Severe turbulence is reported.

2. Aircraft are conducting military aerial refueling.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–13, Military Aerial Refueling.

3. The aircraft previously at that altitude has been issued a climb/descent at pilot's discretion.

5–5–7. PASSING OR DIVERGING

a. *TERMINAL*. When displaying a single site adapted short range or long range radar, and in accordance with the following criteria, all other approved separation may be discontinued and passing or diverging separation applied when

1. Aircraft are on opposite/reciprocal courses and you have observed that they have passed each other; or aircraft are on same or crossing courses/assigned radar vectors and one aircraft has crossed the projected course of the other, and the angular difference between their courses/assigned radar vectors is at least 15 degrees.

NOTE–
Two aircraft, both assigned radar vectors with an angular difference of at least 15 degrees, is considered a correct application of this paragraph.

2. The tracks are monitored to ensure that the primary targets, beacon control slashes, or full digital terminal system primary and/or beacon target symbols will not touch.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1–2–2, Course Definitions.

NOTE–
1. *Apply en route separation rules when using multisensory radar.*

2. *Although all other approved separation may be discontinued, the requirements of para 5-5-4, Minima, subparas e and f must apply when operating behind a heavy jet/B757.*

b. *EN ROUTE*. Vertical separation between aircraft may be discontinued when they are on opposite courses as defined in para 1–2–2, Course Definitions; and

1. You are in communications with both aircraft involved; and

2. You tell the pilot of one aircraft about the other aircraft, including position, direction, type; and

3. One pilot reports having seen the other aircraft and that the aircraft have passed each other; and

4. You have observed that the radar targets have passed each other; and

5. You have advised the pilots if either aircraft is classified as a heavy jet/B757 aircraft.

6. Although vertical separation may be discontinued, the requirements of para 5−5−4, Minima, subparas e and f must be applied when operating behind a heavy jet/B757.

EXAMPLE−
"Traffic, twelve o'clock, Boeing Seven Twenty Seven, opposite direction. Do you have it in sight?"

(If the answer is in the affirmative):

"Report passing the traffic."

(When pilot reports passing the traffic and the radar targets confirm that the traffic has passed, issue appropriate control instructions.)

5−5−8. ADDITIONAL SEPARATION FOR FORMATION FLIGHTS

Because of the distance allowed between formation aircraft and lead aircraft, additional separation is necessary to ensure the periphery of the formation is adequately separated from other aircraft, adjacent airspace, or obstructions. Provide supplemental separation for formation flights as follows:

a. Separate a standard formation flight by adding 1 mile to the appropriate radar separation minima.

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−13, Formation Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5−5−1, Application.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7−7−3, Separation.
P/CG Term− Formation Flight.

b. Separate two standard formation flights from each other by adding 2 miles to the appropriate separation minima.

c. Separate a nonstandard formation flight by applying the appropriate separation minima to the perimeter of the airspace encompassing the nonstandard formation or from the outermost aircraft of the nonstandard formation whichever applies.

d. If necessary for separation between a nonstandard formation and other aircraft, assign an appropriate beacon code to each aircraft in the formation or to the first and last aircraft in-trail.

NOTE−
The additional separation provided in para 5−5−8, Additional Separation for Formation Flights, is not normally added to wake turbulence separation when a formation is following a heavier aircraft since none of the formation aircraft are likely to be closer to the heavier aircraft than the lead aircraft (to which the prescribed wake turbulence separation has been applied).

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−13, Military Aerial Refueling.

5−5−9. SEPARATION FROM OBSTRUCTIONS

a. Except in En Route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC, separate aircraft from obstructions depicted on the radar display by the following minima:

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna− *3 miles.*

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna− *5 miles.*

b. Except in En Route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC, vertical separation of aircraft above an obstruction depicted on the radar display may be discontinued after the aircraft has passed it.

c. En Route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC, apply the radar separation minima specified in para 5−5−4, Minima, subpara b1.

5−5−10. ADJACENT AIRSPACE

a. If coordination between the controllers concerned has not been effected, separate radar-controlled aircraft from the boundary of adjacent airspace in which radar separation is also being used by the following minima:

REFERENCE−
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2−1−14, Coordinate Use of Airspace.

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna− *1 $^{1}/_{2}$ miles.*

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *2 1/2 miles.*

3. En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC:

(a) Below Flight Level 600– *2 1/2 miles*.

(b) Flight Level 600 and above– *5 miles*.

b. Separate radar-controlled aircraft from the boundary of airspace in which nonradar separation is being used by the following minima:

1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *3 miles*.

2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *5 miles*.

3. En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC:

(a) Below Flight Level 600– *5 miles.*

(b) Flight Level 600 and above– *10 miles.*

c. The provisions of subparas a and b do not apply to VFR aircraft being provided Class B, Class C, or TRSA services. Ensure that the targets of these aircraft do not touch the boundary of adjacent airspace.

d. VFR aircraft approaching Class B, Class C, Class D, or TRSA airspace which is under the control jurisdiction of another air traffic control facility should either be provided with a radar handoff or be advised that radar service is terminated, given their position in relation to the Class B, Class C, Class D, or TRSA airspace, and the ATC frequency, if known, for the airspace to be entered. These actions should be accomplished in sufficient time for the pilot to obtain the required ATC approval prior to entering the airspace involved, or to avoid the airspace.

5–5–11. EDGE OF SCOPE

Separate a radar-controlled aircraft climbing or descending through the altitude of an aircraft that has been tracked to the edge of the scope/display by the following minima until nonradar separation has been established:

a. When less than 40 miles from the antenna– *3 miles* from edge of scope.

b. When 40 miles or more from the antenna– *5 miles* from edge of scope.

c. En route Stage A/DARC or Stage A/EDARC:

1. Below Flight Level 600– *5 miles*.

2. Flight Level 600 and above– *10 miles*.

5–5–12. BEACON TARGET DISPLACEMENT

When using a radar target display with a previously specified beacon target displacement to separate a beacon target from a primary target, adjacent airspace, obstructions, or terrain, add a 1 mile correction factor to the applicable minima. The maximum allowable beacon target displacement which may be specified by the facility air traffic manager is 1/2 mile.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3–7–4, Monitoring of Mode 3/A Radar Beacon Codes.

5–5–13. GPA 102/103 CORRECTION FACTOR

When using a radar display whose primary radar video is processed by the GPA 102/103 modification to a joint-use radar system, apply the following correction factors to the applicable minima:

a. If less than 40 miles from the antenna– add *1 mile.*

b. If 40 miles or more but not over 200 miles from the antenna– add *3 miles.*

Section 10. North American ICAO Region

8–10–1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the North American ICAO Region with the procedures and minima contained in this section.

8–10–2. VERTICAL SEPARATION

Provide vertical separation in accordance with:

a. Chapter 4, IFR, Section 5, Altitude Assignment and Verification; and

b. Facility directives depicting the transition between flight levels and metric altitudes.

8–10–3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 3, Longitudinal Separation, apply the following:

a. Minima based on time:

1. *15 minutes* between turbojet aircraft.

2. The prescribed minima in accordance with Paragraph 8–3–3, Mach Number Technique.

3. *20 minutes* between other aircraft.

b. Minima based on distance using Automatic Dependent Surveillance – Contract (ADS-C) in the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs only:

NOTE–
The minima described in this paragraph are not applicable within airspace in the Anchorage Arctic CTA.

1. Apply the minima as specified in TBL 8-10-1 between aircraft on the same track within airspace in the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs designated for Required Navigation Performance (RNP), provided:

(a) Direct controller/pilot communication via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC) is established, and

(b) The required ADS-C periodic reports are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (for example, Ocean21).

TBL 8–10–1
ADS–C Criteria

Minima	RNP	Maximum ADS–C Periodic Reporting Interval
50 NM	10	27 minutes
50 NM	4	32 minutes
30 NM	4	10 minutes

2. Aircraft on reciprocal tracks in the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs may be cleared to climb or descend to or through the altitude(s) occupied by another aircraft provided:

(a) (a) An ADS-C position report on at least one of the aircraft has been received beyond the passing point, and

(b) (b) The aircraft have passed each other by the applicable separation minimum.

NOTE–
Ocean21 has been designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.

3. When an ADS-C periodic or waypoint change event report is overdue by *3 minutes*, the controller must take action to obtain an ADS-C report.

4. If no report is received within *6 minutes* of the time the original report was due, the controller must take action to apply another form of separation.

8–10–4. LATERAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 4, Lateral Separation, apply the following:

a. *50 NM* to RNP–10 approved aircraft within areas where RNP–10 separation and procedures are authorized,

b. *30 NM* to RNP–4 approved aircraft operating within the Anchorage Oceanic CTA and Anchorage Continental CTA when direct controller/pilot communications, via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC), and the required ADS–C contracts are maintained and monitored by

an automated flight data processor (for example, Ocean21).

NOTE–
The minimum described in subparagraph b is not applicable within airspace in the Anchorage Arctic CTA.

c. *90 NM* to aircraft not covered by subparagraphs a or b.

Chapter 9. Special Flights

Section 1. General

9–1–1. GENERAL

Provide aircraft engaged in the flight inspection of NAVAIDs with maximum assistance. Unless otherwise agreed to, maintain direct contact with the pilot and exchange information regarding known traffic in the area and his/her intentions.

NOTE–
1. *Many flight inspections are accomplished using automatic recording equipment, and an uninterrupted flight is necessary for successful completion of the mission. The workload for the limited number of aircraft engaged in these activities requires strict adherence to a schedule.*

2. *Flight inspection operations which require special participation of ground personnel, specific communications, or radar operation capabilities are considered to require special handling. These flights are coordinated with appropriate facilities before departure.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO 8200.1, United States Standard Flight Inspection Manual.
FAAO 8240.41, Flight Inspection/Air Traffic On–Site Coordination Requirements.

9–1–2. SPECIAL HANDLING

a. Clear the aircraft according to pilot request as soon as practicable. Do not ask the pilot to deviate from his/her planned action except to preclude an emergency situation.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 8240.41, Flight Inspection/Air Traffic On–Site Coordination Requirements, Appendix 1, describes certain flight inspection maneuvers in detail.

b. Issue radar advisories to the flight inspection aircraft where adequate coverage exists and to the extent permitted by workload.

c. Suggest flight path adjustments, as required, for any aircraft which will enter or penetrate an area in which a flight inspection function is being performed.

d. Provide special handling, as required, to FAA aircraft conducting flight inspections using the call sign “Flight Check.” The call sign “Flight Check (Nr) recorded” indicates automated flight inspections are in progress in terminal areas.

NOTE–
FAA flight inspection aircraft will file flight plans using the call sign “FLIGHT CHECK” during flight inspections or when inbound to conduct flight inspections. Flight plan remarks may indicate type NAVAID inspection to be accomplished; e.g. “FC OKC P.”

9–1–3. FLIGHT CHECK AIRCRAFT

a. Provide special handling, as required, to expedite flight inspection of NAVAIDs and RADAR by flight check aircraft.

NOTE–
Certain flight inspection maneuvers require operations in close proximity to the surface. These maneuvers can only be performed during daylight visual meteorological conditions. Preplanned automatic flight places the following limitations on the capability of the pilot to adhere to normal ATC clearances:

1. *Route of flight – orbital from 6 nautical miles to a maximum of 40 nautical miles from the facility depending on the type of inspection. During commissioning flight checks all SIDs, STARs, airways, DME fixes, and approaches must be flown.*

2. *Altitude assignment – from 1,000 feet above the antenna site up to the minimum en route altitude (MEA).*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–4 Operational Priority.
FAAO 8240.41, Flight Inspection/Air Traffic On–Site Coordination Requirements, Appendix 1, describes certain flight inspection maneuvers in detail.

b. Avoid changes in the route or altitude from that filed by the pilot in the initial flight plan.

c. Do not impose air traffic control delays in the flight except to preclude emergency situations.

d. Do not change the previously assigned discrete beacon code of special radar accuracy flight check aircraft.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 7–1–2, Special Radar Accuracy Checks.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10–5–4, ASR Performance Checks.

c. If the provisions of subpara a above cannot be accomplished, MTRs may be designated for MARSA operations. To preclude an inadvertent compromise of MARSA standards by ATC, appropriate MARSA application for such routes must be covered in a letter of agreement with the military scheduling activity. Establish separation between aircraft as soon as practicable after operation on the designated MARSA route is ended.

NOTE–
For designated MARSA routes, the military assumes responsibility for separation for MTR aircraft that have passed the primary/alternate entry fix until separation is established by ATC after operations on the MARSA route are completed.

d. The lateral airspace to be protected along an MTR is the designated width of the route.

e. Prior to an aircraft entering an MTR, request the pilot's estimate for the route's exit/alternate exit fix, the pilot's requested altitude after exiting and, if applicable, the number of reentries on a Strategic Training Range (STR).

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Call sign) VERIFY YOUR EXIT FIX ESTIMATE AND REQUESTED ALTITUDE AFTER EXIT,

and if applicable,

THE NUMBER OF REENTRIES.

f. Forward estimates for exit/alternate exit fixes, requested altitude after exit, and, if applicable, the number of reentries on the STR.

g. Apply the procedures of para 6–1–2, Nonreceipt of Position Report, based upon the pilot's estimate for the route exit fix.

h. Clearance may be issued to amend or restrict operations on a route for ATC considerations. Where a route has been designated MARSA in accordance with subpara c, ATC must not amend or restrict operations in such a manner as to compromise MARSA provisions.

NOTE–
When MARSA is provided through route scheduling and circumstances prevent the pilot from entering the route within established time limits, it must be the responsibility of the pilot to inform the ATC facility and advise his/her intentions.

i. If an aircraft on an IR experiences a two-way radio communications failure and you are unable to determine if the aircraft is proceeding VFR in accordance with 14 CFR Section 91.185(b) or the aircraft has not been positively radar identified:

1. Provide separation to the destination airport based on the aircraft complying with the following:

(a) Maintain to the exit/alternate exit fix the higher of the following altitudes:

(1) The minimum IFR altitude for each of the remaining route segment(s) remaining on the route.

(2) The highest altitude assigned in the last ATC clearance.

(b) Depart the exit/alternate exit fix at the appropriate altitude specified in subpara (a) above, then climb/descend to the altitude filed in the flight plan for the remainder of the flight, or

NOTE–
In the event of a two-way communications failure, ATC will be based on the following anticipated pilot action at the exit fix. Unless otherwise covered in a letter of agreement, and if the pilot is unable to comply with the VFR provisions of 14 CFR Section 91.185/FLIP IFR Supplement, the pilot will exercise his/her emergency authority, squawk transponder ***Code 7700****, depart the exit/alternate exit fix and climb/descend (continuing to squawk 7700) to the altitude filed in the flight plan. Subsequent transponder operations will be in accordance with para 10–4–4 Communications Failure. Air traffic controller action from the exit fix is as prescribed in para 10–1–1 Emergency Determinations.*

(c) Proceed in accordance with the lost communication procedure contained in letters of agreement.

2. Continue to monitor the last ATC assigned discrete code.

NOTE–
Pilots who experience a two-way radio failure will adjust their transponder to ***Code 7700*** *during climb/descent to altitude filed for the next leg of the flight plan; then change to* ***Code 7600*** *for a period of 15 minutes. At the end of each 15–minuteperiod, he/she will squawk 7700 for a period of 1 minute; all other times he/she will squawk 7600.*

j. Impose delays, if needed, to eliminate conflict with nonparticipating IFR aircraft when necessary to preclude denial of IR usage. Advise the pilot of the expected length and reason for delay.

9–2–8. INTERCEPTOR OPERATIONS

Provide maximum assistance to expedite the movement of interceptor aircraft on active air defense (scrambles) missions until the unknown aircraft is identified in accordance with the policies and procedures published in FAAO JO 7610.4, Special Operations.

NOTE–
The FAA and the military have mutually agreed to the implementation of policies and procedures for control of air defense interceptor operations. Effective coordination and cooperation between FAA and the military at all levels are essential if policy objectives are to be met.

a. The ADCF initiating the SCRAMBLE must identify the mission as an active air defense mission.

b. ATC services must be used for active air defense missions insofar as the circumstances and situation permits.

c. Upon request, the ATC facility must expedite transfer of the control jurisdiction of the interceptors to the requesting ADCF.

9–2–9. SPECIAL INTEREST SITES

a. Immediately relay any reports or information regarding unusual aircraft activities in the vicinity of special interest sites such as nuclear power plants, power plants, dams, refineries, etc., to supervisory/CIC personnel.

NOTE–
Air traffic controllers have no responsibilities to monitor or observe aircraft in the vicinity of special interest sites unless directed by supervisory/CIC personnel.

9–2–10. WASHINGTON, DC, SPECIAL FLIGHT RULES AREA (DC SFRA)/ATC SECURITY SERVICES

Provide ATC security services at locations where procedures are required for tracking aircraft in security services airspace. ATC security services are designed to support the national security mission of the FAA and other agencies. Two–way radio communications, flight planning, and an operational transponder on an assigned code are required for operations in the designated area.

a. When the assigned code is observed, advise the aircraft to proceed on course/as requested but to remain outside of Class B, C, and/or D airspace as appropriate.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(ACID) TRANSPONDER OBSERVED PROCEED ON COURSE/AS REQUESTED; REMAIN OUTSIDE (class) AIRSPACE.

1. Maintain continuous security tracking of VFR aircraft operating in the designated area to assist security forces in situational awareness. Immediately report all instances of loss of radio communication or the inability to conduct security tracking of an aircraft to the front line manager (FLM)/CIC and wait for instructions.

2. Basic separation services to aircraft, for example, IFR, SVFR, Class B, Class C, TRSA, do not apply to ATC security tracking.

3. Aircraft with operating transponders, but without operating Mode C (altitude), require specific authorization from ATC to operate in the SFRA. ATC must coordinate with the Domestic Events Network (DEN) before approval.

4. Aircraft flying too low for radar coverage must be instructed to report landing or exiting the SFRA. Keep flight progress strips on these aircraft until pilot reports landing or exiting the SFRA. If a flight progress strip does not exist for the aircraft, record the call sign, transponder code, entry point (for example, north, northeast, east), and time of entry into the SFRA.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(Call sign), REPORT LANDING OR LEAVING THE SFRA.

5. United States military, law enforcement, and aeromedical flights are exempt from filing flight plans.

b. Establishing two–way Communications.

1. Pilots must establish two–way radio communications with ATC prior to entering the security service area. Responding to a radio call with, "(a/c call sign) standby," establishes radio communications and the pilot may enter the area, provided all other security requirements have been satisfied.

2. Aircraft requesting security services should not normally be held. However, if holding is necessary or workload/traffic conditions prevent immediate provision of ATC security services, inform the pilot to remain outside the designated area

until conditions permit the provision of ATC security services. Inform the pilot of the expected length of delay.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(A/C call sign) REMAIN OUTSIDE OF THE (location) AND STANDBY. EXPECT (time) MINUTES DELAY.

c. Termination of Service.

1. If the aircraft is not landing within the designated area, provide security services until the aircraft exits the area and then advise the aircraft to squawk VFR and that frequency change is approved.

PHRASEOLOGY–
SQUAWK VFR, FREQUENCY CHANGE APPROVED.

or

CONTACT (facility identification).

2. When an aircraft is landing at an airport inside the area, instruct the pilot to remain on the assigned transponder code until after landing.

PHRASEOLOGY–
(ACID) REMAIN ON YOUR ASSIGNED TRANSPONDER CODE UNTIL YOU LAND, FREQUENCY CHANGE APPROVED.

3. Using approved handoff functionality, transfer the data blocks of all security tracked aircraft that will enter another sector/position for coordination of aircraft information/location. Upon acceptance of the transferred information, instruct the pilot to contact the next sector/positions' frequency.

9–2–11. SECURITY NOTICE (SECNOT)

Upon receiving notification of a SECNOT, the controller must forward all information on the subject aircraft to the FLM/CIC. If information is not known, broadcast call sign on all frequencies and advise the FLM/CIC of the response.

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term – Security Notice.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 19, Section 9, Security Notice (SECNOT).

9–2–12. LAW ENFORCEMENT OPERATIONS BY CIVIL AND MILITARY ORGANIZATIONS

a. Law enforcement alerts.

1. Aircraft lookouts must not be distributed outside the FAA.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 1600.29, Law Enforcement Alert Message System.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2–7–7, Cooperation With Law Enforcement Agencies.

2. Stolen aircraft alerts, including stolen aircraft summaries, may be distributed outside the FAA to: airport offices, air carriers, fixed base operators, and law enforcement agencies.

3. Upon receipt of knowledge concerning an aircraft for which a current law enforcement alert message is held, do the following:

(a) Forward any information on the aircraft to El Paso Intelligence Center (EPIC) and the requester when specified in the message.

(b) Immediately notify the cognizant Transportation Security Administration office by the most rapid means.

(c) DO NOT TAKE ANY OTHER ACTION AFFECTING THE AIRCRAFT, CARGO, CREW, OR PASSENGERS NOT NORMALLY RELATED TO JOB RESPONSIBILITIES.

b. Special law enforcement operations.

1. Special law enforcement operations include inflight identification, surveillance, interdiction and pursuit activities performed in accordance with official civil and/or military mission responsibilities.

2. To facilitate accomplishment of these special missions, exemptions from specified parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations have been granted to designated departments and agencies. However, it is each organization's responsibility to apprise ATC of their intent to operate under an authorized exemption before initiating actual operations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 18–3–1, Authorizations and Exemptions from Title 14, Code of Federal Regulations (14 CFR).

3. Additionally, some departments and agencies that perform special missions have been assigned coded identifiers to permit them to apprise ATC of ongoing mission activities and solicit special air traffic assistance.

REFERENCE–
FAAO 7110.67, Special Aircraft Operations by Law Enforcement/Military Organizations.

NOTE–
As specified in para 2–1–4 Operational Priority, priority of handling for aircraft operating with coded identifiers will be the same as that afforded to SAR aircraft performing a SAR mission.

c. Assistance to law enforcement aircraft operations.

1. Provide the maximum assistance possible to law enforcement aircraft, when requested, in helping them locate suspect aircraft.

2. Communicate with law enforcement aircraft, when possible and if requested, on a frequency not paired with your normal communications frequencies.

3. Do not allow assistance to law enforcement aircraft to violate any required separation minima.

4. Do not assist VFR law enforcement aircraft in any way that will create a situation which, in your judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain or other aircraft.

9–2–13. MILITARY AERIAL REFUELING

Authorize aircraft to conduct aerial refueling along published or special tracks at their flight plan altitude, unless otherwise requested.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO CONDUCT REFUELING ALONG (number) TRACK,

or

FROM (fix) TO (fix),

and

MAINTAIN REFUELING LEVEL (altitude),

or

MAINTAIN (altitude),

or

COMMENCING AT (altitude), DESCENDING TO (altitude).

NOTE–
1. *During aerial refueling, tanker aircraft are responsible for receiver aircraft communication with ATC and for their navigation along the track.*

2. *Aerial refueling airspace is not sterilized airspace and other aircraft may transit this airspace provided vertical or lateral separation is provided from refueling aircraft.*

3. *MARSA begins between the tanker and receiver when the tanker and receiver(s) have entered the air refueling airspace and the tanker advises ATC that he/she is accepting MARSA.*

4. *MARSA ends between the tanker and receiver when the tanker advises ATC that the tanker and receiver aircraft are vertically positioned within the air refueling airspace and ATC advises MARSA is terminated.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–1, Use of MARSA.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–5–8 Additional Separation for Formation Flights.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 10, Aerial Refueling.

a. Provide radar assistance to the rendezvous for participating aircraft:

1. When requested, and

2. By providing vertical separation prior to MARSA declaration.

b. Do not request receiver aircraft that have been cleared to conduct air refueling and have departed the ARIP to:

1. Make code changes when less than 5 miles from the tanker.

2. Squawk standby when less than 1 mile or more than 3 miles from the tanker.

NOTE–
Requests for receiver aircraft to make code changes during air refueling diverts the receiver pilot's attention during a critical phase of flight.

c. When issuing an initial air refueling clearance, you may request a receiver to squawk standby when the receiver reaches a point 3 miles from the tanker.

NOTE–
1. *Receiver aircraft will squawk normal when separation from the tanker is greater than 3 miles.*

2. *Once rendezvous is completed, heading and altitude assignments may be made with the tanker concurrence with MARSA remaining in effect.*

3. *Upon rendezvous completion, the tanker must keep receiver aircraft within 3 miles of the tanker until MARSA is terminated.*

d. After MARSA has been declared, you should avoid issuing course or altitude changes prior to rendezvous.

NOTE–
Altitude or course changes issued will automatically void MARSA.

e. Do not use the altitude vacated during the refueling operation until the refueling aircraft has reported reaching the next IFR altitude.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 6–6–2, Exceptions.

f. Approve requests by the tanker pilot for vectors or alternative routes or altitudes as follows:

1. Furnish vectors or alternative altitudes at any time.

2. Furnish nonradar routes only after the refueling aircraft have passed the ARCP.

NOTE–
1. *To meet a training requirement that aerial refueling be accomplished in a nonradar environment, the military has requested that vectors be furnished only upon request.*

2. *The tanker commander is responsible for coordinating all inflight requests with other aircraft in the refueling mission before submission of such requests to the center.*

3. *Normally, aircraft conducting aerial refueling operations will utilize at least three consecutive altitudes.*

g. Unless a vector or alternative route has been furnished, clear the aircraft to depart the refueling track at a navigational reference point or egress fix.

h. Request an aircraft to report the ARIP, ARCP, or egress fix as necessary.

PHRASEOLOGY–
REPORT:

A–R–I–P,

or

A–R–C–P,

or

EGRESS FIX.

i. Expect the following procedures in addition to those required by the appropriate parts of Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations in the event of two-way communications failure:

1. The tanker will depart the track from the highest altitude in the block.

2. The receiver will depart the track from the lowest altitude in the block.

3. Aircraft will squawk 7600 for at least 2 minutes prior to departing the track.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–14, Military Operations Above FL 600.

9–2–14. MILITARY OPERATIONS ABOVE FL 600

Control aircraft operating above FL 600 using the following procedures:

a. Flight plans involving supersonic flight are required 16 hours in advance of proposed departure times for processing and approval by the ARTCCs concerned. The originating ARTCC, where the flight plan is first filed, may waive the 16–hour advance filing requirement.

b. The route of flight must be defined by at least one high altitude fix within each ARTCC area without regard to the distance between fixes. Additionally, the entry and exit points of turns of 90 degrees or more will be designated.

c. Elapsed times from takeoff to the first fix in each ARTCC area must be included in the route of flight.

d. The ARTCC which originates the flight plan must forward departure times to all ARTCCs responsible for processing the flight plan.

e. Approval of the flight plan indicates approval of both route and flight levels (if stated) including operations below FL 600 (aerial refueling).

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED AS FILED VIA ROUTE AND FLIGHT LEVELS.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–13, Military Aerial Refueling.

f. Separation. Use the following as minima in lieu of the corresponding type of separation prescribed in:

NOTE–
The primary method described to provide separation between two supersonic aircraft is to descend the aircraft at the lower FL and provide vertical separation since the aircraft at the higher FL may not be able to climb rapidly enough to establish the required separation. Another aspect which should be considered is that supersonic aircraft during turns, either programmed or as the result of vectors, will lose a few thousand feet. Vectoring supersonic aircraft seriously affects the range and mission objectives. Radar separation is the preferred method of separating a subsonic aircraft both from another subsonic aircraft or from a supersonic aircraft.

1. Para 4–5–1, Vertical Separation Minima: *5,000 feet.*

NOTE–
1. *The security requirements of the military services preclude the transmission of actual altitude information on the air/ground or landline circuits. A classified document detailing the plan for ascertaining altitude codes for the day should be readily available to the controllers at their positions of operation.*

2. *Pilots will report their altitude, using the coded plan, and intended flight profile on initial contact with each ARTCC.*

2. Para 6–5–4, Minima Along Other Than Established Airways or Routes: Protect the airspace 25 miles either side of the route centerline. For turns by supersonic aircraft, protect the airspace 75 miles on the overflown side and 25 miles on the other side. For turns by subsonic aircraft, protect the airspace 34 miles on the overflown side and 25 miles on the other side.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–3–3 Abbreviated Departure Clearance.

9–2–15. MILITARY SPECIAL USE FREQUENCIES

a. Assign special use frequency to:

NOTE–
Special use frequencies are assigned to ARTCCs in such a manner that adjacent ARTCCs will not have the same frequency. They are to be used within the ARTCC area jurisdiction from the established FL base of the high altitude sectors and above. Each high altitude sector should have the capability to use the special use frequency on a shared basis.

1. USAF, U.S. Navy, and Air National Guard (ANG) single-pilot jet aircraft formations operating at night or in instrument weather conditions. Formations of five or more USAF aircraft deploying either to a continental U.S. staging base or nonstop to an overseas location are authorized to use special use frequencies at any time. Normally these deployments will be conducted within an altitude reservation.

2. U–2 and B–57 (pressure suit flights) aircraft at all altitudes/FLs except where terminal operations require the assignment of other frequencies.

NOTE–
Aerial refueling operations may require that aircraft leave the special use frequency for communications with the tanker. This will occur when the receiver is approximately 200 miles from the ARCP. The tanker aircraft will remain on the ARTCC assigned frequency and will relay clearances to the receiver as required. An alternate means of communications between the tanker and receiver is HF radio.

3. All aircraft during supersonic flight.

NOTE–
Pilots are expected to request assignment of the special use frequency in the remarks section of the flight plan or before entering supersonic flight. B–57 aircraft engaged in pressure suit operations will use the static call sign KITE and flights will normally be conducted from Dover, Eielson, Ellington, Hickman, Howard, Kirtland, and McClellan Air Force Bases.

4. E–3A AWACS mission crews when operations are being conducted as an MRU in accordance with appropriate letters of agreement.

b. The special use frequency may be assigned as "backup" for the high-altitude sector when direct communications are essential because of a potential emergency control situation.

c. Do not assign the special use frequency to the aircraft in subpara a1 above, when they will operate in airspace assigned for special military operations.

9–2–16. AVOIDANCE OF AREAS OF NUCLEAR RADIATION

a. Advise pilots whenever their proposed flight path will traverse a reported or forecasted area of hazardous radiation and reroute the aircraft when requested by the pilot.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 4–4–4, Avoidance of Hazardous Radiation Areas.

b. Inform pilots when an airfield of intended landing lies within a reported or forecasted area of hazardous radiation and request the pilot to advise his/her intentions.

9–2–17. SAMP

Provide special handling to U.S. Government and military aircraft engaged in aerial sampling missions (atmosphere sampling for nuclear, chemical, or

hazardous material contamination). Honor inflight clearance requests for altitude and route changes to the maximum extent possible. Other IFR aircraft may be recleared so that requests by SAMPLER aircraft are honored. Separation standards as outlined in this order must be applied in all cases.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–4 Operational Priority.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–4–20 Aircraft Identification.
FAAO JO 7610.4, Para 4–4–4, Avoidance of Hazardous Radiation Areas.

9–2–18. AWACS/NORAD SPECIAL FLIGHTS

Do not delay E–3 AWACS aircraft identified as "AWACS/NORAD Special" flights. The following control actions are acceptable while expediting these aircraft to the destination orbit.

a. En route altitude changes +/– 2,000 feet from the requested flight level.

b. Radar vectors or minor route changes that do not impede progress towards the destination orbit.

NOTE–
NORAD has a requirement to position E–3 AWACS aircraft at selected locations on a time-critical basis. To the extent possible these flights will utilize routes to the destination orbit that have been precoordinated with the impacted ATC facilities. To identify these flights, the words "AWACS/NORAD SPECIAL" will be included as the first item in the remarks section of the flight plan.

9–2–19. WEATHER RECONNAISSANCE FLIGHTS

TEAL and NOAA mission aircraft fly reconnaissance flights to gather meteorological data on winter storms, (NWSOP missions), hurricanes and tropical cyclones (NHOP missions). The routes and timing of these flights are determined by movement of the storm areas and not by traffic flows.

a. When a dropsonde release time is received from a TEAL or NOAA mission aircraft, workload and priorities permitting, controllers must advise the mission aircraft of any traffic estimated to pass through the area of the drop at altitudes below that of the mission aircraft. This traffic advisory must include:

1. Altitude.

2. Direction of flight.

3. ETA at the point closest to drop area (or at the fix/intersection where drop will occur).

NOTE–
A dropsonde is a 14–inch long cardboard cylinder about 2.75 inches in diameter, that weighs approximately 14 ounces (400 grams), and has a parachute attached. When released from the aircraft it will fall at a rate of approximately 2,500 feet per minute. Controllers should recognize that a dropsonde released at FL 310 will be a factor for traffic at FL 210 four minutes later. It is the aircraft commanders responsibility to delay release of dropsondes if traffic is a factor. Aircraft commanders will delay release of dropsondes based solely upon traffic as issued by ATC.

b. When advised that an airborne TEAL or NOAA aircraft is requesting a clearance via CARCAH, issue the clearance in accordance with Chapter 4, IFR, Section 2, Clearances.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–1 Clearance Items.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–2 Clearance Prefix.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 4–2–3 Delivery Instructions.

c. If a TEAL or NOAA mission aircraft must be contacted but is out of VHF, UHF, and HF radio range, advise the supervisory traffic management coordinator–in–charge.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5–3–6, Weather Reconnaissance Flights.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–4 Operational Priority.

9–2–20. EVASIVE ACTION MANEUVER

Approve a pilot request to conduct an evasive action maneuver only on the basis of a permissible traffic situation. Specify the following items, as necessary, when issuing approval:

NOTE–
The "evasive action" maneuver is performed by a bomber/fighter bomber aircraft at or above FL 250 along a 60 NM long segment of the flight plan route overlying a RBS or other site and includes:

1. *Flying a zigzag pattern on both the left and right side of the flight plan route centerline. Altitude deviations are made in conjunction with the lateral maneuvering.*

2. *Lateral deviations from the route centerline will not normally exceed 12 miles. Altitude variations must not exceed plus or minus 1,000 feet of the assigned flight level; i.e., confined within a 2,000 foot block.*

a. Specific route segment on which the maneuver will take place.

b. Distance of maximum route deviation from the centerline in miles.

c. Altitude.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED TO CONDUCT EVASIVE ACTION MANEUVER FROM (fix) TO (fix),

and

(number of miles) EITHER SIDE OF CENTERLINE,

and

MAINTAIN (altitude) THROUGH (altitude),

and

COMPLETE MANEUVER AT (fix) AT (altitude).

9–2–21. NONSTANDARD FORMATION/ CELL OPERATIONS

Occasionally the military is required to operate in a nonstandard cell formation and controllers should be knowledgeable of the various tactics employed and the procedures used.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 12, Section 12, Formation Flight.

a. Formation leaders are responsible for obtaining ATC approval to conduct nonstandard formation/cell operations.

b. When nonstandard formation/cell operations have been approved, controllers must assign sufficient altitudes to allow intra-cell vertical spacing of 500 feet between each aircraft in the formation.

c. Control nonstandard formation/cell operations on the basis that MARSA is applicable between the participating aircraft until they establish approved separation which is acknowledged by ATC.

d. Apply standard separation criteria between the approved nonstandard formation/cell envelope and nonparticipating aircraft.

e. Clear aircraft operating in a nonstandard formation/cell to the breakup fix as the clearance limit. Forward data pertaining to route or altitude beyond the breakup point to the center concerned as a part of the routine flight plan information.

f. *EN ROUTE.* If the breakup occurs in your area, issue appropriate clearances to authorize transition from formation to individual routes or altitudes. If a breakup cannot be approved, issue an appropriate clearance for the flight to continue as a formation.

9–2–22. OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT

a. OPEN SKIES aircraft will be identified by the call sign "OSY" (OPEN SKIES) followed by the flight number and a one–letter mission suffix.

EXAMPLE–
OSY123D
Mission suffixes:
**F = Observation Flights (Priority).*
**D = Demonstration Flights (Priority).*
**T = Transit Flights (Nonpriority).*

NOTE–
1. *Observation/Demonstration flights are conducted under rigid guidelines outlined in the Treaty of OPEN SKIES that govern sensor usage, maximum flight distances, altitudes and priorities.*

2. *Transit flights are for the sole purpose of moving an OPEN SKIES aircraft from airport to airport in preparation for an actual OPEN SKIES "F" or "D" mission.*

b. Provide priority and special handling to expedite the movement of an OPEN SKIES observation or demonstration flight.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–4 Operational Priority, subpara n.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 5–3–7, OPEN SKIES Treaty Aircraft.
Treaty on OPEN SKIES, Treaty Document, 102–37.

c. OPEN SKIES (F and D) Treaty aircraft, while maintaining compliance with ATC procedures, must have priority over activities in special use airspace (SUA) and must be allowed to transit such airspace as filed after appropriate and timely coordination has been accomplished between the using agency and controlling agency. A letter of agreement is required between the using agency and the controlling agency for Open Skies F and D aircraft to transit active SUA. When Open Skies F and D aircraft transit SUA, an ATC facility must provide standard separation services at all times.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9-3-4 Transiting Active SUA/ATCAA

1. F and D Treaty flights transiting SUA will be handled in the following manner:

(a) The ATC facility controlling the F and D Treaty flight must advise the using/scheduling

agency or appropriate ATC facility upon initial notification and when the aircraft is 15 minutes from the SUA boundary; and

(1) For SUA that has an ATC facility providing services to the area, provide standard separation. If the ATC facility is unable to provide standard separation from the activities in the SUA, the using agency must confirm that all operations in the SUA have ceased.

(2) For SUA not associated with an ATC facility, the using/scheduling agency must return the SUA to the controlling agency and confirm that all operations in the SUA have ceased.

(b) If the controlling facility/using agency is unable to confirm that all conflicting activities in the SUA have ceased, the OPEN SKIES aircraft must not be permitted access to the SUA.

2. Return SUA to the using agency, if appropriate, within (15) minutes after the F and D Treaty aircraft clears the SUA.

d. Clear the aircraft according to the filed flight plan.

1. Do not ask the pilot to deviate from the planned action or route of flight except to preclude an emergency situation or other higher priority aircraft.

2. Do not impose air traffic control delays except to preclude emergency situations or other higher priority aircraft.

NOTE–
If for reasons of flight safety the route or altitude must be changed, return the aircraft to the filed flight plan route as soon as practical.

Section 3. Special Use, ATC–Assigned Airspace, and Stationary ALTRVs

9–3–1. APPLICATION

Apply the procedures in this section to aircraft operating in proximity to special use, ATC-assigned airspace (ATCAA), and stationary ALTRVs unless the airspace is designated an alert area/controlled firing area or one of the following conditions exist:

NOTE–
These procedures are not applicable to Alert Areas or Controlled Firing Areas.

REFERENCE–
P/CG Term– Special Use Airspace.

a. The pilot informs you that permission has been obtained from the using agency to operate in the airspace.

b. The using agency informs you they have given permission for the aircraft to operate in the airspace.

NOTE–
Using agency permission may be relayed to the pilot.

c. The restricted/warning area, MOA, ATCAA, or stationary ALTRV has been released to the controlling agency.

d. The aircraft is on an approved ALTRV, unless the airspace area in question is an ATCAA.

NOTE–
Mission project officers are responsible for obtaining approval for ALTRV operations within prohibited/ restricted/warning areas, MOAs, and stationary ALTRVs.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–3–4 Transiting Active SUA/ATCAA.

e. Operations in special use airspace and stationary ALTRVs located in offshore/oceanic airspace will be conducted in accordance with the procedures in Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures.

9–3–2. SEPARATION MINIMA

Unless clearance of nonparticipating aircraft in/ through/adjacent to a prohibited/restricted/ warning area/MOA/ATCAA/stationary ALTRV is provided for in a letter of agreement (LOA) or letter of procedure (LOP), separate nonparticipating aircraft from active special use airspace, ATCAAs, and stationary ALTRVs by the following minima:

a. Assign an altitude consistent with para 4-5-2, Flight Direction, and 4-5-3, Exceptions, which is at least 500 feet (above FL 290-1000 feet) above/below the upper/lower limit of the prohibited/ restricted/ warning area/MOA/ ATCAA/stationary ALTRV.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2-1-17, Prohibited/Restricted Areas and Stationary ALTRVs

b. Provide radar separation of 3 miles (FL 600 and above - 6 miles) from the special use airspace, ATCAA, or stationary ALTRV peripheral boundary.

c. Clear aircraft on airways or routes whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap the peripheral boundary.

d. Exception. Some prohibited/restricted/ warning areas are established for security reasons or to contain hazardous activities not involving aircraft operations. Where facility management has identified these areas as outlined in FAA Order JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, vector aircraft to remain clear of the peripheral boundary.

NOTE–
Nonparticipating aircraft refers to those aircraft for which you have separation responsibility and which have not been authorized by the using agency to operate in/through the special use airspace, ATCAA, or stationary ALTRV in question. VFR traffic is not prohibited from transiting stationary ALTRVs.

9–3–3. VFR-ON-TOP

If the aircraft's route, track, or altitude may cause it to enter an active Prohibited/Restricted/Warning Area, MOA, or ATCAA:

a. Inform the pilot to conduct flight "VFR–on–top" at least 500 feet above the upper limit or below the lower limit of the airspace (subject to para 7–3–1, VFR–on–top); or

PHRASEOLOGY–
MAINTAIN VFR-ON-TOP AT LEAST 500 FEET ABOVE/BELOW (upper/lower limit of airspace) ACROSS (name or number of airspace) BETWEEN (fix) AND (fix);

and if the airspace is an ATCAA,

(name of ATCAA) IS ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 7–1–1 Class A Airspace Restrictions.

b. Clear the aircraft via a routing which provides approved separation from the airspace.

c. *Exception:* Some Prohibited/Restricted Areas are established for security reasons or to contain hazardous activities not involving aircraft operations. The addition of 500 (or 1,000) feet to the upper/lower limit of these Prohibited/Restricted Areas is not required if the areas have been identified by facility management.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2–1–17, Prohibited/Restricted Areas.

9–3–4. TRANSITING ACTIVE SUA/ATCAA

If a LOA/LOP has been coordinated with the Using Agency and permission has been granted to transit the area:

a. Comply with the instruction/clearances issued by the Using Agency and provide the applicable separation minima between aircraft when two or more aircraft are transiting the area; or

NOTE–
Some Using Agencies are also air traffic control facilities.

b. If unable to comply with instructions/clearances, clear the aircraft in accordance with para 9–3–2, Separation Minima.

NOTE–
The FAA has no jurisdictional authority over the use of nonjoint use prohibited/restricted/warning area airspace; therefore, clearance cannot be issued for flight therein without the appropriate approval.

Chapter 10. Emergencies

Section 1. General

10–1–1. EMERGENCY DETERMINATIONS

a. An emergency can be either a *Distress* or an *Urgency* condition as defined in the "Pilot/Controller Glossary."

b. A pilot who encounters a *Distress* condition should declare an emergency by beginning the initial communication with the word "Mayday," preferably repeated three times. For an *Urgency* condition, the word "Pan-Pan" should be used in the same manner.

c. If the words "Mayday" or "Pan-Pan" are not used and you are in doubt that a situation constitutes an emergency or potential emergency, handle it as though it were an emergency.

d. Because of the infinite variety of possible emergency situations, specific procedures cannot be prescribed. However, when you believe an emergency exists or is imminent, select and pursue a course of action which appears to be most appropriate under the circumstances and which most nearly conforms to the instructions in this manual.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9–2–7 IFR Military Training Routes.

10–1–2. OBTAINING INFORMATION

Obtain enough information to handle the emergency intelligently. Base your decision as to what type of assistance is needed on information and requests received from the pilot because he/she is authorized by 14 CFR Part 91 to determine a course of action.

10–1–3. PROVIDING ASSISTANCE

Provide maximum assistance to aircraft in distress. Enlist the services of available radar facilities operated by the FAA, the military services, and the Federal Communications Commission, as well as their emergency services and facilities, when the pilot requests or when you deem necessary.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–1–4 Operational Priority.

10–1–4. RESPONSIBILITY

a. If you are in communication with an aircraft in distress, handle the emergency and coordinate and direct the activities of assisting facilities. Transfer this responsibility to another facility only when you feel better handling of the emergency will result.

b. When you receive information about an aircraft in distress, forward detailed data to the center in whose area the emergency exists.

NOTE–
1. *Centers serve as the central points for collecting information, for coordinating with SAR, and for conducting a communications search by distributing any necessary ALNOTs concerning:*

a. *Overdue or missing IFR aircraft.*

b. *Aircraft in an emergency situation occurring in their respective area.*

c. *Aircraft on a combination VFR/IFR or an airfiled IFR flight plan and 30 minutes have passed since the pilot requested IFR clearance and neither communication nor radar contact can be established with it. For SAR purposes, these aircraft are treated the same as IFR aircraft.*

d. *Overdue or missing aircraft which have been authorized to operate in accordance with special VFR clearances.*

2. *Notifying the center about a VFR aircraft emergency allows provision of IFR separation if considered necessary.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–2–5 Emergency Situations.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–3–2 Information to be Forwarded to ARTCC.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–3–3 Information to be Forwarded to RCC.

c. If the aircraft involved is operated by a foreign air carrier, notify the center serving the departure or destination point, when either point is within the U.S., for relay to the operator of the aircraft.

d. The ARTCC must be responsible for receiving and relaying all pertinent ELT signal information to the appropriate authorities.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–2–10 Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) Signals.

e. When consideration is given to the need to escort an aircraft in distress, evaluate the close formation required by both aircraft. Special consideration should be given if the maneuver takes the aircraft through the clouds.

f. Before a determination is made to have an aircraft in distress be escorted by another aircraft, ask the pilots if they are familiar with and capable of formation flight.

1. Do not allow aircraft to join up in formation during emergency conditions, unless:

(a) The pilots involved are familiar with and capable of formation flight.

(b) They can communicate with one another, and have visual contact with each other.

2. If there is a need for aircraft that are not designated as search and rescue aircraft to get closer to one another than radar separation standards allow, the maneuver must be accomplished, visually, by the aircraft involved.

10–1–5. COORDINATION

Coordinate efforts to the extent possible to assist any aircraft believed overdue, lost, or in emergency status.

10–1–6. AIRPORT GROUND EMERGENCY

TERMINAL

a. When an emergency occurs on the airport proper, control other air and ground traffic to avoid conflicts in the area where the emergency is being handled. This also applies when routes within the airport proper are required for movement of local emergency equipment going to or from an emergency which occurs outside the airport proper.

NOTE–
Aircraft operated in proximity to accident or other emergency or disaster locations may cause hindrances to airborne and surface rescue or relief operations. Congestion, distraction or other effects, such as wake turbulence from nearby airplanes and helicopters, could prevent or delay proper execution of these operations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Chapter 19, Temporary Flight Restrictions.
14 CFR Section 91.137, Temporary Flight Restrictions.

b. Workload permitting, monitor the progress of emergency vehicles responding to a situation. If necessary, provide available information to assist responders in finding the accident/incident scene.

10–1–7. INFLIGHT EMERGENCIES INVOLVING MILITARY FIGHTER-TYPE AIRCRAFT

a. The design and complexity of military fighter-type aircraft places an extremely high workload on the pilot during an inflight emergency. The pilot's full attention is required to maintain control of the aircraft. Therefore, radio frequency and transponder code changes should be avoided and radio transmissions held to a minimum, especially when the aircraft experiencing the emergency is at low altitude.

b. Pilots of military fighter–type aircraft, normally single engine, experiencing or anticipating loss of engine power or control may execute a flameout pattern in an emergency situation. Circumstances may dictate that the pilot, depending on the position and nature of the emergency, modify the pattern based on actual emergency recovery requirements.

c. Military airfields with an assigned flying mission may conduct practice emergency approaches. Participating units maintain specific procedures for conducting these operations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 3–10–13 Simulated Flameout (SFO) Approaches/Emergency Landing Pattern (ELP) Operations/Practice Precautionary Approaches.

Section 2. Emergency Assistance

10–2–1. INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS

a. Start assistance as soon as enough information has been obtained upon which to act. Information requirements will vary, depending on the existing situation. Minimum required information for inflight emergencies is:

NOTE–
In the event of an ELT signal see para 10–2–10, Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) Signals.

1. Aircraft identification and type.

2. Nature of the emergency.

3. Pilot's desires.

b. After initiating action, obtain the following items or any other pertinent information from the pilot or aircraft operator, as necessary:

NOTE–
Normally, do not request this information from military fighter-type aircraft that are at low altitudes (i.e., on approach, immediately after departure, on a low level route, etc.). However, request the position of an aircraft that is not visually sighted or displayed on radar if the location is not given by the pilot.

1. Aircraft altitude.

2. Fuel remaining in time.

3. Pilot reported weather.

4. Pilot capability for IFR flight.

5. Time and place of last known position.

6. Heading since last known position.

7. Airspeed.

8. Navigation equipment capability.

9. NAVAID signals received.

10. Visible landmarks.

11. Aircraft color.

12. Number of people on board.

13. Point of departure and destination.

14. Emergency equipment on board.

10–2–2. FREQUENCY CHANGES

Although 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz are emergency frequencies, it might be best to keep the aircraft on the initial contact frequency. Change frequencies only when there is a valid reason.

10–2–3. AIRCRAFT ORIENTATION

Orientate an aircraft by the means most appropriate to the circumstances. Recognized methods include:

a. Radar.

b. NAVAIDs.

c. Pilotage.

d. Sighting by other aircraft.

10–2–4. ALTITUDE CHANGE FOR IMPROVED RECEPTION

When you consider it necessary and if weather and circumstances permit, recommend that the aircraft maintain or increase altitude to improve communications or radar.

NOTE–
Aircraft with high-bypass turbofan engines (such as B747) encountering volcanic ash clouds have experienced total loss of power to all engines. Damage to engines due to volcanic ash ingestion increases as engine power is increased, therefore, climb while in the ash cloud is to be avoided where terrain permits.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 7–5–9, Flight Operations in Volcanic Ash.

10–2–5. EMERGENCY SITUATIONS

Consider that an aircraft emergency exists and inform the RCC or ARTCC when any of the following exist:

NOTE–
USAF facilities are only required to notify the ARTCC.

a. An emergency is declared by either:

1. The pilot.

2. Facility personnel.

3. Officials responsible for the operation of the aircraft.

b. There is unexpected loss of radar contact and radio communications with any IFR or VFR aircraft.

c. Reports indicate it has made a forced landing, is about to do so, or its operating efficiency is so impaired that a forced landing will be necessary.

d. Reports indicate the crew has abandoned the aircraft or is about to do so.

e. An emergency transponder code is displayed or reported.

NOTE–
EN ROUTE. During Stage A operation, ***Code 7700*** *causes EMRG to blink in field E of the data block.*

f. Intercept or escort aircraft services are required.

g. The need for ground rescue appears likely.

h. An Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) signal is heard or reported.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–1–3, Providing Assistance.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–2–10, Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT) Signals.

10–2–6. HIJACKED AIRCRAFT

Hijack attempts or actual events are a matter of national security and require special handling. Policy and procedures for hijack situations are detailed in FAAO JO 7610.4, Special Operations. FAAO JO 7610.4 describes reporting requirements, air crew procedures, air traffic procedures and escort or interceptor procedures for hijack situations.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 7, Hijacked/Suspicious Aircraft Reporting and Procedures.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 5–2–13, Code Monitor.

10–2–7. VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY

a. If VFR aircraft requests assistance when it encounters or is about to encounter IFR weather conditions, determine the facility best able to provide service. If a frequency change is necessary, advise the pilot of the reason for the change, and request the aircraft contact the appropriate control facility. Inform that facility of the situation. If the aircraft is unable to communicate with the control facility, relay information and clearances.

b. The following must be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of **Code 7700**:

1. *TERMINAL.* Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. *EN ROUTE.* An appropriate keyboard entry must be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

10–2–8. RADAR ASSISTANCE TO VFR AIRCRAFT IN WEATHER DIFFICULTY

a. If a VFR aircraft requests radar assistance when it encounters or is about to encounter IFR weather conditions, ask the pilot if he/she is qualified for and capable of conducting IFR flight.

b. If the pilot states he/she is qualified for and capable of IFR flight, request him/her to file an IFR flight plan and then issue clearance to destination airport, as appropriate.

c. If the pilot states he/she is not qualified for or not capable of conducting IFR flight, or if he/she refuses to file an IFR flight plan, take whichever of the following actions is appropriate:

1. Inform the pilot of airports where VFR conditions are reported, provide other available pertinent weather information, and ask if he/she will elect to conduct VFR flight to such an airport.

2. If the action in subpara 1 above is not feasible or the pilot declines to conduct VFR flight to another airport, provide radar assistance if the pilot:

(a) Declares an emergency.

(b) Refuses to declare an emergency and you have determined the exact nature of the radar services the pilot desires.

3. If the aircraft has already encountered IFR conditions, inform the pilot of the appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude. If the aircraft is below appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude and sufficiently accurate position information has been received or radar identification is established, furnish a heading or radial on which to climb to reach appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude.

d. The following must be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of **Code 7700**:

1. *TERMINAL.* Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. *EN ROUTE.* An appropriate keyboard entry must be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

10–2–9. RADAR ASSISTANCE TECHNIQUES

Use the following techniques to the extent possible when you provide radar assistance to a pilot not qualified to operate in IFR conditions:

a. Avoid radio frequency changes except when necessary to provide a clear communications channel.

b. Make turns while the aircraft is in VFR conditions so it will be in a position to fly a straight course while in IFR conditions.

c. Have pilot lower gear and slow aircraft to approach speed while in VFR conditions.

d. Avoid requiring a climb or descent while in a turn if in IFR conditions.

e. Avoid abrupt maneuvers.

f. Vector aircraft to VFR conditions.

g. The following must be accomplished on a Mode C equipped VFR aircraft which is in emergency but no longer requires the assignment of **Code 7700**:

1. *TERMINAL.* Assign a beacon code that will permit terminal minimum safe altitude warning (MSAW) alarm processing.

2. *EN ROUTE.* An appropriate keyboard entry must be made to ensure en route MSAW (EMSAW) alarm processing.

10–2–10. EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT) SIGNALS

When an ELT signal is heard or reported:

a. *EN ROUTE.* Notify the Rescue Coordination Center (RCC).

NOTE–
FAA Form 7210–8, ELT INCIDENT, contains standardized format for coordination with the RCC.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 9–3–1, FAA Form 7210–8, ELT Incident.

b. *TERMINAL.* Notify the ARTCC which will coordinate with the RCC.

NOTE–
1. *Operational ground testing of emergency locator transmitters (ELTs) has been authorized during the first 5 minutes of each hour. To avoid confusing the tests with an actual alarm, the testing is restricted to no more than three audio sweeps.*

2. *Controllers can expect pilots to report aircraft position and time the signal was first heard, aircraft position and time the signal was last heard, aircraft position at maximum signal strength, flight altitude, and frequency of the emergency signal (121.5/243.0). (See AIM, Para 6–2–5,Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT).)*

c. *TERMINAL.* Attempt to obtain fixes or bearings on the signal.

d. Solicit the assistance of other aircraft known to be operating in the signal area.

e. *TERMINAL.* Forward fixes or bearings and any other pertinent information to the ARTCC.

NOTE–
Fix information in relation to a VOR or VORTAC (radial-distance) facilitates accurate ELT plotting by RCC and should be provided when possible.

f. *EN ROUTE.* When the ELT signal strength indicates the signal may be emanating from somewhere on an airport or vicinity thereof, notify the on-site technical operations personnel and the Regional Operations Center (ROC) for their actions. This action is in addition to the above.

g. *TERMINAL.* When the ELT signal strength indicates the signal may be emanating from somewhere on the airport or vicinity thereof, notify the on-site technical operations personnel and the ARTCC for their action. This action is in addition to the above.

h. Air traffic personnel must not leave their required duty stations to locate an ELT signal source.

NOTE–
Portable handcarried receivers assigned to air traffic facilities (where no technical operations personnel are available) may be loaned to responsible airport personnel or local authorities to assist in locating the ELT signal source.

i. *EN ROUTE.* Notify the RCC and the ROC if signal source is located/terminated.

j. *TERMINAL*. Notify the ARTCC if signal source is located/terminated.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–1–4 Responsibility.
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–2–1 Information Requirements.

10–2–11. AIRCRAFT BOMB THREATS

a. When information is received from any source that a bomb has been placed on, in, or near an aircraft for the purpose of damaging or destroying such aircraft, notify your supervisor or the facility air traffic manager. If the threat is general in nature, handle it as a "Suspicious Activity." When the threat is targeted against a specific aircraft and you are in contact with the suspect aircraft, take the following actions as appropriate:

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7610.4, Chapter 7, Hijacked/Suspicious Aircraft Reporting and Procedures.

1. Advise the pilot of the threat.

2. Inform the pilot that technical assistance can be obtained from an FAA aviation explosives expert.

NOTE–
An FAA aviation explosive expert is on call at all times and may be contacted by calling the FAA Operations Center, Washington, DC, Area Code 202–267–3333, ETN 521–0111, or DSN 851–3750. Technical advice can be relayed to assist civil or military air crews in their search for a bomb and in determining what precautionary action to take if one is found.

3. Ask the pilot if he/she desires to climb or descend to an altitude that would equalize or reduce the outside air pressure/existing cabin air pressure differential. Issue or relay an appropriate clearance considering MEA, MOCA, MRA, and weather.

NOTE–
Equalizing existing cabin air pressure with outside air pressure is a key step which the pilot may wish to take to minimize the damage potential of a bomb.

4. Handle the aircraft as an emergency and/or provide the most expeditious handling possible with respect to the safety of other aircraft, ground facilities, and personnel.

NOTE–
Emergency handling is discretionary and should be based on the situation. With certain types of threats, plans may call for a low-key action or response.

5. Issue or relay clearances to a new destination if requested.

6. When a pilot requests technical assistance or if it is apparent that a pilot may need such assistance, do NOT suggest what actions the pilot should take concerning a bomb, but obtain the following information and notify your supervisor who will contact the FAA aviation explosives expert:

NOTE–
This information is needed by the FAA aviation explosives expert so that he/she can assess the situation and make immediate recommendations to the pilot. The aviation explosives expert may not be familiar with all military aircraft configurations but he/she can offer technical assistance which would be beneficial to the pilot.

(a) Type, series, and model of the aircraft.

(b) Precise location/description of the bomb device if known.

(c) Other details which may be pertinent.

NOTE–
The following details may be of significance if known, but it is not intended that the pilot should disturb a suspected bomb/bomb container to ascertain the information: The altitude or time set for the bomb to explode, type of detonating action (barometric, time, anti-handling, remote radio transmitter), power source (battery, electrical, mechanical), type of initiator (blasting cap, flash bulb, chemical), and the type of explosive/incendiary charge (dynamite, black powder, chemical).

b. When a bomb threat involves an aircraft on the ground and you are in contact with the suspect aircraft, take the following actions in addition to those discussed in the preceding paragraphs which may be appropriate:

1. If the aircraft is at an airport where tower control or FSS advisory service is not available, or if the pilot ignores the threat at any airport, recommend that takeoff be delayed until the pilot or aircraft operator establishes that a bomb is not aboard in accordance with 14 CFR Part 121. If the pilot insists on taking off and in your opinion the operation will not adversely affect other traffic, issue or relay an ATC clearance.

REFERENCE–
14 CFR Section 121.538, Airplane Security.

2. Advise the aircraft to remain as far away from other aircraft and facilities as possible, to clear the runway, if appropriate, and to taxi to an isolated or designated search area. When it is impractical or if the pilot takes an alternative action; e.g., parking and off-loading immediately, advise other aircraft to

remain clear of the suspect aircraft by at least 100 yards if able.

NOTE–
Passenger deplaning may be of paramount importance and must be considered before the aircraft is parked or moved away from service areas. The decision to use ramp facilities rests with the pilot, aircraft operator/airport manager.

c. If you are unable to inform the suspect aircraft of a bomb threat or if you lose contact with the aircraft, advise your supervisor and relay pertinent details to other sectors or facilities as deemed necessary.

d. When a pilot reports the discovery of a bomb or suspected bomb on an aircraft which is airborne or on the ground, determine the pilot's intentions and comply with his/her requests in so far as possible. Take all of the actions discussed in the preceding paragraphs which may be appropriate under the existing circumstances.

e. The handling of aircraft when a hijacker has or is suspected of having a bomb requires special considerations. Be responsive to the pilot's requests and notify supervisory personnel. Apply hijacking procedures and offer assistance to the pilot according to the preceding paragraphs, if needed.

10–2–12. EXPLOSIVE DETECTION K–9 TEAMS

Take the following actions should you receive an aircraft request for the location of the nearest explosive detection K–9 team.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2–1–11, Explosives Detection K–9 Teams.

a. Obtain the aircraft identification and position and advise your supervisor of the pilot request.

b. When you receive the nearest location of the explosive detection K–9 team, relay the information to the pilot.

c. If the aircraft wishes to divert to the airport location provided, obtain an estimated arrival time from the pilot and advise your supervisor.

10–2–13. MANPADS ALERT

When a threat or attack from Man–Portable Air Defense Systems (MANPADS) is determined to be real, notify and advise aircraft as follows:

a. Do not withhold landing clearance. To the extent possible, issue information on MANPADS threats, confirmed attacks, or post–event activities in time for it to be useful to the pilot. The pilot or parent company will determine the pilot's actions.

b. MANPADS information will be disseminated via the ATIS and/or controller–to–pilot transmissions.

c. Disseminate via controller–to–pilot transmission until the appropriate MANPADS information is broadcast via the ATIS and pilots indicate they have received the appropriate ATIS code. MANPADS information will include nature and location of threat or incident, whether reported or observed and by whom, time (if known), and when transmitting to an individual aircraft, a request for pilot's intentions.

PHRASEOLOGY–
ATTENTION (aircraft identification), MANPADS ALERT. EXERCISE EXTREME CAUTION. MANPADS THREAT/ATTACK/POST–EVENT ACTIVITY OBSERVED/REPORTED BY (reporting agency) (location) AT (time, if known). (When transmitting to an individual aircraft) SAY INTENTIONS.

EXAMPLE–
"Attention Eastern Four Seventeen, MANPADS alert. Exercise extreme caution. MANPADS threat reported by TSA, LaGuardia vicinity. Say intentions."

"Attention all aircraft, MANPADS alert. Exercise extreme caution. MANPADS post–event activity observed by tower south of airport at two–one–zero–zero Zulu."

d. Report MANPADS threat/attack/post–event activity until notified otherwise by FAA national headquarters.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–9–3, Content.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2–1–9, Handling MANPADS Incidents.

10–2–14. UNAUTHORIZED LASER ILLUMINATION OF AIRCRAFT

a. When a laser event is reported to an air traffic facility, broadcast on all appropriate frequencies a general caution warning every five minutes for 20 minutes following the last report.

PHRASEOLOGY–
UNAUTHORIZED LASER ILLUMINATION EVENT, (location), (altitude).

b. Terminal facilities must include reported unauthorized laser illumination events on the ATIS broadcast for one hour following the last report.

Include the time, location, altitude, color, and direction of the laser as reported by the pilot.

NOTE–
All personnel can expect aircrews to regard lasers as an inflight emergency and may take evasive action to avoid laser illumination. Additionally, other aircraft may request clearance to avoid the area.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 2–9–3, Content.
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2–1–27, Reporting Unauthorized Laser Illumination of Aircraft.

10–2–15. EMERGENCY AIRPORT RECOMMENDATION

a. Consider the following factors when recommending an emergency airport:

1. Remaining fuel in relation to airport distances.

2. Weather conditions.

NOTE–
Depending on the nature of the emergency, certain weather phenomena may deserve weighted consideration when recommending an airport; e.g., a pilot may elect to fly farther to land at an airport with VFR instead of IFR conditions.

3. Airport conditions.

4. NAVAID status.

5. Aircraft type.

6. Pilot's qualifications.

7. Vectoring or homing capability to the emergency airport.

b. Consideration to the provisions of subpara a and para 10–2–16, Guidance to Emergency Airport, must be used in conjunction with the information derived from any automated emergency airport information source.

10–2–16. GUIDANCE TO EMERGENCY AIRPORT

a. When necessary, use any of the following for guidance to the airport:

1. Radar.

2. Following another aircraft.

3. NAVAIDs.

4. Pilotage by landmarks.

5. Compass headings.

b. Consideration to the provisions of para 10–2–15, Emergency Airport Recommendation, must be used in conjunction with the information derived from any automated emergency airport information source.

10–2–17. EMERGENCY OBSTRUCTION VIDEO MAP (EOVM)

a. The EOVM is intended to facilitate advisory service to an aircraft in an emergency situation wherein an appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude cannot be maintained. It must only be used and the service provided under the following conditions:

1. The pilot has declared an emergency, or

2. The controller has determined that an emergency condition exists or is imminent because of the pilot's inability to maintain an appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitude.

NOTE–
Appropriate terrain/obstacle clearance minimum altitudes may be defined as Minimum IFR Altitude (MIA), Minimum En Route Altitude (MEA), Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude (MOCA), or Minimum Vectoring Altitude (MVA).

b. When providing emergency vectoring service, the controller must advise the pilot that any headings issued are emergency advisories intended only to direct the aircraft toward and over an area of lower terrain/obstacle elevation.

NOTE–
Altitudes and obstructions depicted on the EOVM are the actual altitudes and locations of the obstacle/terrain and contain no lateral or vertical buffers for obstruction clearance.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 3–9–4, Emergency Obstruction Video Map (EOVM).

10–2–18. VOLCANIC ASH

a. If a volcanic ash cloud is known or forecast to be present:

1. Relay all information available to pilots to ensure that they are aware of the ash cloud's position and altitude(s).

2. Suggest appropriate reroutes to avoid the area of known or forecast ash clouds.

NOTE–
Volcanic ash clouds are not normally detected by airborne or air traffic radar systems.

b. If advised by an aircraft that it has entered a volcanic ash cloud and indicates that a distress situation exists:

1. Consider the aircraft to be in an emergency situation.

2. Do not initiate any climb clearances to turbine–powered aircraft until the aircraft has exited the ash cloud.

3. Do not attempt to provide escape vectors without pilot concurrence.

NOTE–
1. *The recommended escape maneuver is to reverse course and begin a descent (if terrain permits). However, it is the pilot's responsibility to determine the safest escape route from the ash cloud.*

2. *Controllers should be aware of the possibility of complete loss of power to any turbine–powered aircraft that encounters an ash cloud.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–2–4 Altitude Change for Improved Reception.
AIM, Para 7–5–9, Flight Operations in Volcanic Ash.

10–2–19. REPORTING DEATH, ILLNESS, OR OTHER PUBLIC HEALTH RISK ON BOARD AIRCRAFT

a. If an air traffic controller receives a report of the death of person, an illness, and/or other public health risk obtain the following information and notify the operations manager in charge (OMIC)/front line manager (FLM)/controller-in-charge (CIC) as soon as possible.

1. Call sign.

2. Number of suspected cases of illness on board.

3. Nature of the illnesses or other public health risk, if known.

4. Number of persons on board.

5. Number of deaths, if applicable.

6. Pilot's intent (for example, continue to destination or divert).

7. Any request for assistance (for example, needing emergency medical services to meet the aircraft at arrival).

b. The OMIC/FLM/CIC must relay the information to the DEN as soon as possible.

NOTE–
1. *If the ATC facility is not actively monitoring the DEN or does not have a dedicated line to the DEN, they must call into the DEN directly via (202) 493-4170.*

2. *Except in extraordinary circumstances, such as a situation requiring ATC intervention, follow-on coordination regarding the incident will not involve ATC frequencies.*

3. *The initial report to a U.S. ATC facility may be passed from a prior ATC facility along the route of flight.*

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2-1-29, REPORTING DEATH, ILLNESS, OR OTHER PUBLIC HEALTH RISK ON BOARD AIRCRAFT

Chapter 11. Traffic Management Procedures

Section 1. General

11–1–1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY

a. The mission of the traffic management system is to balance air traffic demand with system capacity to ensure the maximum efficient utilization of the NAS.

b. It is recognized that the ATCS is integral in the execution of the traffic management mission.

NOTE–
Complete details of traffic management initiatives and programs can be found in FAAO JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration.

11–1–2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

a. Supervisory Traffic Management Coordinator–in–Charge (STMCIC) must:

1. Ensure that an operational briefing is conducted at least once during the day and evening shifts. Participants must include, at a minimum, the STMCIC, Operations Supervisors (OS), Traffic Management Coordinator(s) (TMC), and other interested personnel as designated by facility management. Discussions at the meeting should include meteorological conditions (present and forecasted), staffing, equipment status, runways in use, AAR and traffic management initiatives (present and anticipated).

2. Assume responsibility for TMC duties when not staffed.

3. Ensure that traffic management initiatives are carried out by Supervisory Traffic Management Coordinator–in–Charge (STMCIC).

4. Where authorized, perform URET data entries to keep the activation status of designated URET Airspace Configuration Elements current.

5. Perform assigned actions in the event of a URET outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.

6. Ensure changes to restrictions based on the Restrictions Inventory and Evaluation are implemented in a timely manner.

b. FLM must:

1. Keep the TMU and affected sectors apprised of situations or circumstances that may cause congestion or delays.

2. Coordinate with the TMU and ATCSs to develop appropriate traffic management initiatives for sectors and airports in their area of responsibility.

3. Continuously review traffic management initiatives affecting their area of responsibility and coordinate with TMU for extensions, revisions, or cancellations.

4. Ensure that traffic management initiatives are carried out by ATCSs.

5. Where authorized, perform URET data entries to keep the activation status of designated URET Airspace Configuration Elements current.

6. Perform assigned actions in the event of a URET outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.

7. Ensure changes to restrictions based on the Restrictions Inventory and Evaluation are implemented in a timely manner.

c. ATCSs must:

1. Ensure that traffic management initiatives and programs are enforced within their area of responsibility. Traffic management initiatives and programs do not have priority over maintaining:

(a) Separation of aircraft.

(b) Procedural integrity of the sector.

2. Keep the OS and TMU apprised of situations or circumstances that may cause congestion or delays.

3. Continuously review traffic management initiatives affecting their area of responsibility and coordinate with OS and TMU for extensions, revisions, or cancellations.

4. Where authorized, perform URET data entries to keep the activation status of designated URET Airspace Configuration Elements current.

5. Perform assigned actions in the event of a URET outage or degradation, in accordance with the requirements of FAA Order JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, and as designated by facility directive.

d. ARTCCs, unless otherwise coordinated, must:

1. Support TMA operations and monitor TMA equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to traffic management initiatives.

2. Monitor arrival flow for potential metering actions/changes and, if necessary, initiate coordination with all facilities to discuss the change to the metering plan.

e. TRACONs, unless otherwise coordinated, must:

1. Support TMA operations and monitor TMA equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to traffic management initiatives.

2. Monitor arrival flow for potential metering actions/changes and, if necessary, initiate coordination with all facilities to discuss the change to the metering plan.

3. Schedule internal departures in accordance with specific written procedures and agreements developed with overlying ARTCCs and adjacent facilities.

f. ATCTs, unless otherwise coordinated, must:

1. Monitor TMA equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to traffic management initiatives.

2. Release aircraft, when CFR is in effect, so they are airborne within a window that extends from 2 minutes prior and ends 1 minute after the assigned time.

NOTE–
Coordination may be verbal, electronic, or written.

11–1–3. TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)

During periods of metering, ATCS must:

a. Display TMA schedule information on the main display monitor (MDM).

b. Comply with TMA-generated metering times within +/- 1 minute.

1. If TMA-generated metering time accuracy within +/- 1 minute cannot be used for specific aircraft due to significant jumps in the delay countdown timer (DCT), other traffic management initiatives may be used between those aircraft such as miles-in-trail (MIT) or minutes-in-trail (MINIT) to assist in delay absorption until stability resumes.

2. An exception to the requirement to comply within +/- 1 minute may be authorized for certain ARTCC sectors if explicitly defined in an appropriate facility directive.

c. When compliance is not possible, coordinate with FLM and adjacent facilities/sectors as appropriate.

NOTE–
TMA accuracy of generated metering times is predicated on several factors, including vectoring outside of TMA route conformance boundaries (route recovery logic), certain trajectory ground speed calculations, and when TMU resequences a specific flight or flight list. Caution should be used in these situations to minimize impact on surrounding sector traffic and complexity levels, flight efficiencies, and user preferences.

Section 2. Ocean21 – Oceanic

The following procedures are applicable to the operation of the Ocean21 Oceanic Air Traffic Control (ATC) System.

13–2–1. DESCRIPTION

a. The Ocean21 ATC System is utilized in designated en route/oceanic airspace. Ocean21 includes both surveillance and flight data processing, which provides the controllers with automated decision support tools to establish, monitor and maintain separation between aircraft, and aircraft to airspace and terrain.

b. Ocean21 capabilities include:

1. MEARTS based radar surveillance processing.

2. Conflict Prediction and Reporting.

3. Automatic Dependent Surveillance–Broadcast (ADS–B).

4. Automatic Dependent Surveillance–Contract (ADS–C).

5. Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC).

6. ATS Interfacility Data Communications (AIDC).

7. Additional Decision Support Tools used primarily for situational awareness.

8. Electronic Flight Data including Electronic Flight Strips.

13–2–2. CONFLICT DETECTION AND RESOLUTION

The controller must use the most accurate information available to initiate, monitor, and maintain separation.

a. Apply the following procedures in airspace where conflict probe is being utilized as a decision support tool:

1. Conflict Probe Results.

(a) Controllers must assume that the conflict probe separation calculations are accurate.

(b) Unless otherwise prescribed in subpara a3, controllers must utilize the results from conflict probe to initiate and maintain the prescribed separation minima.

2. Conflict Resolution.

(a) When a controller is alerted to a conflict, which will occur in his/her sector, take the appropriate action to resolve the conflict.

(b) The controller responsible for resolving a conflict must evaluate the alert and take appropriate action as early as practical, in accordance with duty priorities, alert priority, and operational considerations.

(c) Unless otherwise specified in facility directives, the controller must take immediate action to resolve any “red” conflicts.

3. Overriding Conflict Probe.

(a) Controllers must not override conflict probe except for the following situations:

(1) The application of a separation standard not recognized by conflict probe listed in subpara a8(a), or as identified by facility directive.

(2) When action has been taken to resolve the identified conflict and separation has been ensured, or

(3) Control responsibility has been delegated to another sector or facility, or

(4) Other situations as specified in facility directives.

(b) Controllers must continue to ensure that separation is maintained until the overridden conflict is resolved.

4. Use of Probe when Issuing Clearances. Utilize conflict probe results when issuing a clearance to ensure that any potential conflict has been given thorough consideration.

5. Use of Probe when Accepting Manual Transfers. Prior to manually accepting an aircraft transfer from an external facility ensure that the coordinated flight profile is accurately entered, conflict probe initiated and, if necessary, action is taken to resolve any potential conflicts.

6. Trial Probe. The controller can utilize trial probe to assess whether there are any potential conflicts with a proposed clearance or when performing manual coordination.

NOTE–
Once initiated, trial probe does not take into account any changes made to the proposed profile or to any other flight profile in the system. It is an assessment by conflict probe of the current situation at the time the controller enters the trial probe. A trial probe does not alleviate the controller from performing a conflict probe when issuing a clearance or accepting a transfer.

7. System Unable to Perform Conflict Probe for a Specific Aircraft.

(a) If a flight's profile becomes corrupted, conflict probe may not be able to correctly monitor separation for that flight. Take the necessary steps to correct an aircraft's flight plan when conflict probe could not be performed.

(b) In addition, after verifying flight plan data accuracy, utilize other decision support tools to establish and maintain the appropriate separation minima until such time that conflict probe can be utilized.

8. Conflict Probe Limitations.

(a) Conflict Probe does not support the following separation minima:

(1) Subpara 8–4–2a2 – Nonintersecting paths.

(2) Subpara 8–4–2d – Intersecting flight paths with variable width protected airspace.

(3) Subpara 8–4–3a – Reduction of Route Protected Airspace, below FL 240.

(4) Subpara 8–4–3b – Reduction of Route Protected Airspace, at and above FL 240.

(5) Subpara 8–4–4a1 – Same NAVAID: VOR/VORTAC/TACAN.

(6) Subpara 8–4–4a2 – Same NAVAID: NDB.

(7) Subpara 8–4–4c – Dead Reckoning.

(8) Para 8–5–4 – Same Direction.

(9) Para 8–6–3 – Temporary Moving Airspace Reservations.

(10) Para 8–8–5 – VFR Climb and Descent.

b. Additional Decision Support Tools: These support tools include: range/bearing, time of passing, intercept angle, the aircraft situation display (ASD) and electronic flight data.

1. The results provided by these additional decision support/controller tools can be used by the controller for maintaining situational awareness and monitoring flight profile information, and for establishing and maintaining separation standards not supported by probe, or when probe is unavailable.

2. Under no circumstances must the controller utilize any of the additional decision support tools to override probe results when the applicable separation standard is supported by probe and none of the other conditions for overriding probe apply.

13–2–3. INFORMATION MANAGEMENT

a. Currency of Information: The sector team is responsible for ensuring that manually entered data is accurate and timely. Ensure that nonconformant messages are handled in a timely manner and that the flight's profile is updated as necessary.

NOTE–
Conflict probe accuracy requires timely updates of data used to model each flight's trajectory. If this data is not current, the aircraft flight profile and probe results may be misleading.

b. Data Block Management.

1. Ensure that the data block reflects the most current flight information and controller applied indicators as specified in facility directives.

2. Ensure that appropriate and timely action is taken when a special condition code is indicated in the data block.

c. Electronic Flight Strip Management.

1. Electronic flight strips must be maintained in accordance with facility directives and the following:

(a) Annotations. Ensure that annotations are kept up to date.

(b) Reduced Separation Flags. Ensure the flags listed below are selected appropriately for each flight:

(1) M– Mach Number Technique (MNT).

(2) R– Reduced MNT.

PILOT/CONTROLLER GLOSSARY

PURPOSE

a. This Glossary was compiled to promote a common understanding of the terms used in the Air Traffic Control system. It includes those terms which are intended for pilot/controller communications. Those terms most frequently used in pilot/controller communications are printed in ***bold italics***. The definitions are primarily defined in an operational sense applicable to both users and operators of the National Airspace System. Use of the Glossary will preclude any misunderstandings concerning the system's design, function, and purpose.

b. Because of the international nature of flying, terms used in the Lexicon, published by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), are included when they differ from FAA definitions. These terms are followed by "[ICAO]." For the reader's convenience, there are also cross references to related terms in other parts of the Glossary and to other documents, such as the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) and the Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM).

c. This Glossary will be revised, as necessary, to maintain a common understanding of the system.

EXPLANATION OF CHANGES

d. Terms Added:
AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV) GPS PRM APPROACH
LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID (LDA) PRM APPROACH
SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACH (SOIA)

e. Terms Deleted:
DF
DF APPROACH PROCEDURE
DF FIX
DF GUIDANCE
DF STEER
DIRECTION FINDER
UDF
UVDF
VDF

f. Terms Modified:
CONTROLLER PILOT DATA LINK COMMUNICATIONS (CPDLC)
GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM (GNSS)
GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS)
ILS PRM APPROACH
LORAN
NIGHT
PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR (PRM)
SECURITY NOTICE (SECNOT)

g. Editorial/format changes were made where necessary. Revision bars were not used due to the insignificant nature of the changes.

APD–
(See AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION.)

APDIA–
(See AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION INHIBITED AREA.)

APPROACH CLEARANCE– Authorization by ATC for a pilot to conduct an instrument approach. The type of instrument approach for which a clearance and other pertinent information is provided in the approach clearance when required.
(See CLEARED APPROACH.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to AIM.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY– A terminal ATC facility that provides approach control service in a terminal area.
(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)
(See RADAR APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE– Air traffic control service provided by an approach control facility for arriving and departing VFR/IFR aircraft and, on occasion, en route aircraft. At some airports not served by an approach control facility, the ARTCC provides limited approach control service.
(See ICAO term APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE [ICAO]– Air traffic control service for arriving or departing controlled flights.

APPROACH GATE– An imaginary point used within ATC as a basis for vectoring aircraft to the final approach course. The gate will be established along the final approach course 1 mile from the final approach fix on the side away from the airport and will be no closer than 5 miles from the landing threshold.

APPROACH LIGHT SYSTEM–
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

APPROACH SEQUENCE– The order in which aircraft are positioned while on approach or awaiting approach clearance.
(See LANDING SEQUENCE.)
(See ICAO term APPROACH SEQUENCE.)

APPROACH SEQUENCE [ICAO]– The order in which two or more aircraft are cleared to approach to land at the aerodrome.

APPROACH SPEED– The recommended speed contained in aircraft manuals used by pilots when making an approach to landing. This speed will vary for different segments of an approach as well as for aircraft weight and configuration.

APPROPRIATE ATS AUTHORITY [ICAO]– The relevant authority designated by the State responsible for providing air traffic services in the airspace concerned. In the United States, the "appropriate ATS authority" is the Program Director for Air Traffic Planning and Procedures, ATP-1.

APPROPRIATE AUTHORITY–

a. Regarding flight over the high seas: the relevant authority is the State of Registry.

b. Regarding flight over other than the high seas: the relevant authority is the State having sovereignty over the territory being overflown.

APPROPRIATE OBSTACLE CLEARANCE MINIMUM ALTITUDE– Any of the following:
(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)

APPROPRIATE TERRAIN CLEARANCE MINIMUM ALTITUDE– Any of the following:
(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)

APRON– A defined area on an airport or heliport intended to accommodate aircraft for purposes of loading or unloading passengers or cargo, refueling, parking, or maintenance. With regard to seaplanes, a ramp is used for access to the apron from the water.
(See ICAO term APRON.)

APRON [ICAO]– A defined area, on a land aerodrome, intended to accommodate aircraft for purposes of loading or unloading passengers, mail or cargo, refueling, parking or maintenance.

ARC– The track over the ground of an aircraft flying at a constant distance from a navigational aid by reference to distance measuring equipment (DME).

AREA CONTROL CENTER [ICAO]– An air traffic control facility primarily responsible for ATC services being provided IFR aircraft during the en route phase of flight. The U.S. equivalent facility is an air route traffic control center (ARTCC).

AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV)– A method of navigation which permits aircraft operation on any desired flight path within the coverage of ground– or space–based navigation aids or within the limits of the capability of self-contained aids, or a combination of these.

Note: Area navigation includes performance–based navigation as well as other operations that do not meet the definition of performance–based navigation.

AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV) APPROACH CONFIGURATION:

a. STANDARD T– An RNAV approach whose design allows direct flight to any one of three initial approach fixes (IAF) and eliminates the need for procedure turns. The standard design is to align the procedure on the extended centerline with the missed approach point (MAP) at the runway threshold, the final approach fix (FAF), and the initial approach/intermediate fix (IAF/IF). The other two IAFs will be established perpendicular to the IF.

b. MODIFIED T– An RNAV approach design for single or multiple runways where terrain or operational constraints do not allow for the standard T. The "T" may be modified by increasing or decreasing the angle from the corner IAF(s) to the IF or by eliminating one or both corner IAFs.

c. STANDARD I– An RNAV approach design for a single runway with both corner IAFs eliminated. Course reversal or radar vectoring may be required at busy terminals with multiple runways.

d. TERMINAL ARRIVAL AREA (TAA)– The TAA is controlled airspace established in conjunction with the Standard or Modified T and I RNAV approach configurations. In the standard TAA, there are three areas: straight-in, left base, and right base. The arc boundaries of the three areas of the TAA are published portions of the approach and allow aircraft to transition from the en route structure direct to the nearest IAF. TAAs will also eliminate or reduce feeder routes, departure extensions, and procedure turns or course reversal.

1. STRAIGHT-IN AREA– A 30NM arc centered on the IF bounded by a straight line extending through the IF perpendicular to the intermediate course.

2. LEFT BASE AREA– A 30NM arc centered on the right corner IAF. The area shares a boundary with the straight-in area except that it extends out for 30NM from the IAF and is bounded on the other side by a line extending from the IF through the FAF to the arc.

3. RIGHT BASE AREA– A 30NM arc centered on the left corner IAF. The area shares a boundary with the straight-in area except that it extends out for 30NM from the IAF and is bounded on the other side by a line extending from the IF through the FAF to the arc.

AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV) GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) PRECISION RUNWAY MONITORING (PRM) APPROACH – A GPS approach, which requires vertical guidance, used in lieu of an ILS PRM approach to conduct approaches to parallel runways whose extended centerlines are separated by less than 4,300 feet and at least 3,000 feet, where closely spaced independent approaches are permitted. Also used in lieu of an ILS PRM and/or LDA PRM approach to conduct Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approach (SOIA) operations.

ARINC– An acronym for Aeronautical Radio, Inc., a corporation largely owned by a group of airlines. ARINC is licensed by the FCC as an aeronautical station and contracted by the FAA to provide communications support for air traffic control and meteorological services in portions of international airspace.

ARMY AVIATION FLIGHT INFORMATION BULLETIN– A bulletin that provides air operation data covering Army, National Guard, and Army Reserve aviation activities.

ARO–

(See AIRPORT RESERVATION OFFICE.)

ARRESTING SYSTEM– A safety device consisting of two major components, namely, engaging or catching devices and energy absorption devices for the purpose of arresting both tailhook and/or nontailhook-equipped aircraft. It is used to prevent aircraft from overrunning runways when the aircraft cannot be stopped after landing or during aborted

takeoff. Arresting systems have various names; e.g., arresting gear, hook device, wire barrier cable.
(See ABORT.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT INTERVAL– An internally generated program in hundredths of minutes based upon the AAR. AAI is the desired optimum interval between successive arrival aircraft over the vertex.

ARRIVAL CENTER– The ARTCC having jurisdiction for the impacted airport.

ARRIVAL DELAY– A parameter which specifies a period of time in which no aircraft will be metered for arrival at the specified airport.

ARRIVAL SECTOR– An operational control sector containing one or more meter fixes.

ARRIVAL SECTOR ADVISORY LIST– An ordered list of data on arrivals displayed at the PVD/MDM of the sector which controls the meter fix.

ARRIVAL SEQUENCING PROGRAM– The automated program designed to assist in sequencing aircraft destined for the same airport.

ARRIVAL TIME– The time an aircraft touches down on arrival.

ARSR–
(See AIR ROUTE SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)

ARTCC–
(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)

ARTS–
(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

ASDA–
(See ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

ASDA [ICAO]–
(See ICAO Term ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

ASDE–
(See AIRPORT SURFACE DETECTION EQUIPMENT.)

ASF–
(See AIRPORT STREAM FILTER.)

ASLAR–
(See AIRCRAFT SURGE LAUNCH AND RECOVERY.)

ASP–
(See ARRIVAL SEQUENCING PROGRAM.)

ASR–
(See AIRPORT SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)

ASR APPROACH–
(See SURVEILLANCE APPROACH.)

ASSOCIATED– A radar target displaying a data block with flight identification and altitude information.
(See UNASSOCIATED.)

ATC–
(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL.)

ATC ADVISES– Used to prefix a message of noncontrol information when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.
(See ADVISORY.)

ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE– Airspace of defined vertical/lateral limits, assigned by ATC, for the purpose of providing air traffic segregation between the specified activities being conducted within the assigned airspace and other IFR air traffic.
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

ATC CLEARANCE–
(See AIR TRAFFIC CLEARANCE.)

ATC CLEARS– Used to prefix an ATC clearance when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.

ATC INSTRUCTIONS– Directives issued by air traffic control for the purpose of requiring a pilot to take specific actions; e.g., “Turn left heading two five zero,” “Go around,” “Clear the runway.”
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

ATC PREFERRED ROUTE NOTIFICATION– URET notification to the appropriate controller of the need to determine if an ATC preferred route needs to be applied, based on destination airport.
(See ROUTE ACTION NOTIFICATION.)
(See USER REQUEST EVALUATION TOOL.)

ATC PREFERRED ROUTES– Preferred routes that are not automatically applied by Host.

ATC REQUESTS– Used to prefix an ATC request when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.

ATC SECURITY SERVICES – Communications and security tracking provided by an ATC facility in support of the DHS, the DOD, or other Federal security elements in the interest of national security. Such security services are only applicable within designated areas. ATC security services do not include ATC basic radar services or flight following.

ATC SECURITY SERVICES POSITION – The position responsible for providing ATC security services as defined. This position does not provide ATC, IFR separation, or VFR flight following services, but is responsible for providing security services in an area comprising airspace assigned to one or more ATC operating sectors. This position may be combined with control positions.

ATC SECURITY TRACKING – The continuous tracking of aircraft movement by an ATC facility in support of the DHS, the DOD, or other security elements for national security using radar (i.e., radar tracking) or other means (e.g., manual tracking) without providing basic radar services (including traffic advisories) or other ATC services not defined in this section.

ATCAA–
(See ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE.)

ATCRBS–
(See RADAR.)

ATCSCC–
(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER.)

ATCT–
(See TOWER.)

ATD–
(See ALONG–TRACK DISTANCE.)

ATIS–
(See AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

ATIS [ICAO]–
(See ICAO Term AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

ATS ROUTE [ICAO]– A specified route designed for channelling the flow of traffic as necessary for the provision of air traffic services.

Note: The term “ATS Route” is used to mean variously, airway, advisory route, controlled or uncontrolled route, arrival or departure, etc.

AUTOLAND APPROACH– An autoland approach is a precision instrument approach to touchdown and, in some cases, through the landing rollout. An autoland approach is performed by the aircraft autopilot which is receiving position information and/or steering commands from onboard navigation equipment.

Note: Autoland and coupled approaches are flown in VFR and IFR. It is common for carriers to require their crews to fly coupled approaches and autoland approaches (if certified) when the weather conditions are less than approximately 4,000 RVR.

(See COUPLED APPROACH.)

AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER– A precoordinated process, specifically defined in facility directives, during which a transfer of altitude control and/or radar identification is accomplished without verbal coordination between controllers using information communicated in a full data block.

AUTOMATED MUTUAL-ASSISTANCE VESSEL RESCUE SYSTEM– A facility which can deliver, in a matter of minutes, a surface picture (SURPIC) of vessels in the area of a potential or actual search and rescue incident, including their predicted positions and their characteristics.

(See FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–6–4, INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES.)

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION (APD)– An Automation Processing capability that compares trajectories in order to predict conflicts.

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION BOUNDARY (APB)– The adapted distance beyond a facilities boundary defining the airspace within which URET performs conflict detection.

(See USER REQUEST EVALUATION TOOL.)

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION INHIBITED AREA (APDIA)– Airspace surrounding a terminal area within which APD is inhibited for all flights within that airspace.

AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS (ARTS)– A generic term for several tracking systems included in the Terminal Automation Systems (TAS). ARTS plus a suffix roman numeral denotes a major modification to that system.

a. ARTS IIIA. The Radar Tracking and Beacon Tracking Level (RT&BTL) of the modular, programmable automated radar terminal system. ARTS IIIA detects, tracks, and predicts primary as well as secondary radar-derived aircraft targets. This

more sophisticated computer-driven system upgrades the existing ARTS III system by providing improved tracking, continuous data recording, and fail-soft capabilities.

b. Common ARTS. Includes ARTS IIE, ARTS IIIE; and ARTS IIIE with ACD (see DTAS) which combines functionalities of the previous ARTS systems.

c. Programmable Indicator Data Processor (PIDP). The PIDP is a modification to the AN/TPX–42 interrogator system currently installed in fixed RAPCONs. The PIDP detects, tracks, and predicts secondary radar aircraft targets. These are displayed by means of computer–generated symbols and alphanumeric characters depicting flight identification, aircraft altitude, ground speed, and flight plan data. Although primary radar targets are not tracked, they are displayed coincident with the secondary radar targets as well as with the other symbols and alphanumerics. The system has the capability of interfacing with ARTCCs.

AUTOMATED WEATHER SYSTEM– Any of the automated weather sensor platforms that collect weather data at airports and disseminate the weather information via radio and/or landline. The systems currently consist of the Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS), Automated Weather Sensor System (AWSS) and Automated Weather Observation System (AWOS).

AUTOMATED UNICOM– Provides completely automated weather, radio check capability and airport advisory information on an Automated UNICOM system. These systems offer a variety of features, typically selectable by microphone clicks, on the UNICOM frequency. Availability will be published in the Airport/Facility Directory and approach charts.

AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORT–
(See ALTITUDE READOUT.)

AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORTING– That function of a transponder which responds to Mode C interrogations by transmitting the aircraft's altitude in 100-foot increments.

AUTOMATIC CARRIER LANDING SYSTEM– U.S. Navy final approach equipment consisting of precision tracking radar coupled to a computer data link to provide continuous information to the aircraft, monitoring capability to the pilot, and a backup approach system.

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE (ADS) [ICAO]– A surveillance technique in which aircraft automatically provide, via a data link, data derived from on–board navigation and position fixing systems, including aircraft identification, four dimensional position and additional data as appropriate.

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE–BROADCAST (ADS-B)– A surveillance system in which an aircraft or vehicle to be detected is fitted with cooperative equipment in the form of a data link transmitter. The aircraft or vehicle periodically broadcasts its GPS–derived position and other information such as velocity over the data link, which is received by a ground–based transmitter/receiver (transceiver) for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.
(See GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM.)
(See GROUND–BASED TRANSCEIVER.)

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE–CONTRACT (ADS–C)– A data link position reporting system, controlled by a ground station, that establishes contracts with an aircraft's avionics that occur automatically whenever specific events occur, or specific time intervals are reached.

AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER– An aircraft radio navigation system which senses and indicates the direction to a L/MF nondirectional radio beacon (NDB) ground transmitter. Direction is indicated to the pilot as a magnetic bearing or as a relative bearing to the longitudinal axis of the aircraft depending on the type of indicator installed in the aircraft. In certain applications, such as military, ADF operations may be based on airborne and ground transmitters in the VHF/UHF frequency spectrum.
(See BEARING.)
(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

AUTOMATIC FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE (AFIS) – ALASKA FSSs ONLY– The continuous broadcast of recorded non–control information at airports in Alaska where a FSS provides local airport advisory service. The AFIS broadcast automates the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information such as weather, wind, altimeter, favored runway, breaking action, airport NOTAMs, and other applicable information. The information is continuously broadcast over a discrete VHF radio frequency (usually the ASOS/AWSS/AWOS frequency.)

AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE– The continuous broadcast of recorded noncontrol information in selected terminal areas. Its purpose is to improve controller effectiveness and to relieve frequency congestion by automating the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information; e.g., "Los Angeles information Alfa. One three zero zero Coordinated Universal Time. Weather, measured ceiling two thousand overcast, visibility three, haze, smoke, temperature seven one, dew point five seven, wind two five zero at five, altimeter two niner niner six. I-L-S Runway Two Five Left approach in use, Runway Two Five Right closed, advise you have Alfa."

(See ICAO term AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE [ICAO]– The provision of current, routine information to arriving and departing aircraft by means of continuous and repetitive broadcasts throughout the day or a specified portion of the day.

AUTOROTATION– A rotorcraft flight condition in which the lifting rotor is driven entirely by action of the air when the rotorcraft is in motion.

a. Autorotative Landing/Touchdown Autorotation. Used by a pilot to indicate that the landing will be made without applying power to the rotor.

b. Low Level Autorotation. Commences at an altitude well below the traffic pattern, usually below 100 feet AGL and is used primarily for tactical military training.

c. 180 degrees Autorotation. Initiated from a downwind heading and is commenced well inside the normal traffic pattern. "Go around" may not be possible during the latter part of this maneuver.

AVAILABLE LANDING DISTANCE (ALD)– The portion of a runway available for landing and roll-out for aircraft cleared for LAHSO. This distance is measured from the landing threshold to the hold-short point.

AVIATION WEATHER SERVICE– A service provided by the National Weather Service (NWS) and FAA which collects and disseminates pertinent weather information for pilots, aircraft operators, and ATC. Available aviation weather reports and forecasts are displayed at each NWS office and FAA FSS.

(See EN ROUTE FLIGHT ADVISORY SERVICE.)

(See TRANSCRIBED WEATHER BROADCAST.)

(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

(Refer to AIM.)

AWW–

(See SEVERE WEATHER FORECAST ALERTS.)

AZIMUTH (MLS)– A magnetic bearing extending from an MLS navigation facility.

Note: Azimuth bearings are described as magnetic and are referred to as "azimuth" in radio telephone communications.

4. CLASS D– Generally, that airspace from the surface to 2,500 feet above the airport elevation (charted in MSL) surrounding those airports that have an operational control tower. The configuration of each Class D airspace area is individually tailored and when instrument procedures are published, the airspace will normally be designed to contain the procedures. Arrival extensions for instrument approach procedures may be Class D or Class E airspace. Unless otherwise authorized, each person must establish two-way radio communications with the ATC facility providing air traffic services prior to entering the airspace and thereafter maintain those communications while in the airspace. No separation services are provided to VFR aircraft.

5. CLASS E– Generally, if the airspace is not Class A, Class B, Class C, or Class D, and it is controlled airspace, it is Class E airspace. Class E airspace extends upward from either the surface or a designated altitude to the overlying or adjacent controlled airspace. When designated as a surface area, the airspace will be configured to contain all instrument procedures. Also in this class are Federal airways, airspace beginning at either 700 or 1,200 feet AGL used to transition to/from the terminal or en route environment, en route domestic, and offshore airspace areas designated below 18,000 feet MSL. Unless designated at a lower altitude, Class E airspace begins at 14,500 MSL over the United States, including that airspace overlying the waters within 12 nautical miles of the coast of the 48 contiguous States and Alaska, up to, but not including 18,000 feet MSL, and the airspace above FL 600.

CONTROLLED AIRSPACE [ICAO]– An airspace of defined dimensions within which air traffic control service is provided to IFR flights and to VFR flights in accordance with the airspace classification.

Note: Controlled airspace is a generic term which covers ATS airspace Classes A, B, C, D, and E.

CONTROLLED TIME OF ARRIVAL– Arrival time assigned during a Traffic Management Program. This time may be modified due to adjustments or user options.

CONTROLLER–

(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SPECIALIST.)

CONTROLLER [ICAO]– A person authorized to provide air traffic control services.

CONTROLLER PILOT DATA LINK COMMUNICATIONS (CPDLC)– A two–way digital communications system that conveys textual air traffic control messages between controllers and pilots using ground or satellite-based radio relay stations.

CONVECTIVE SIGMET– A weather advisory concerning convective weather significant to the safety of all aircraft. Convective SIGMETs are issued for tornadoes, lines of thunderstorms, embedded thunderstorms of any intensity level, areas of thunderstorms greater than or equal to VIP level 4 with an area coverage of $^{4}/_{10}$ (40%) or more, and hail $^{3}/_{4}$ inch or greater.

(See AIRMET.)
(See AWW.)
(See CWA.)
(See SIGMET.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CONVECTIVE SIGNIFICANT METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION–

(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

COORDINATES– The intersection of lines of reference, usually expressed in degrees/minutes/seconds of latitude and longitude, used to determine position or location.

COORDINATION FIX– The fix in relation to which facilities will handoff, transfer control of an aircraft, or coordinate flight progress data. For terminal facilities, it may also serve as a clearance for arriving aircraft.

COPTER–

(See HELICOPTER.)

CORRECTION– An error has been made in the transmission and the correct version follows.

COUPLED APPROACH– A coupled approach is an instrument approach performed by the aircraft autopilot which is receiving position information and/or steering commands from onboard navigation equipment. In general, coupled nonprecision approaches must be discontinued and flown manually at altitudes lower than 50 feet below the minimum descent altitude, and coupled precision approaches must be flown manually below 50 feet AGL.

Note: Coupled and autoland approaches are flown in VFR and IFR. It is common for carriers to require their crews to fly coupled approaches and autoland approaches (if certified) when the weather conditions are less than approximately 4,000 RVR.

(See AUTOLAND APPROACH.)

COURSE–

a. The intended direction of flight in the horizontal plane measured in degrees from north.

b. The ILS localizer signal pattern usually specified as the front course or the back course.

c. The intended track along a straight, curved, or segmented MLS path.

(See BEARING.)
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See MICROWAVE LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See RADIAL.)

CPDLC–

(See CONTROLLER PILOT DATA LINK COMMUNICATIONS.)

CPL [ICAO]–

(See ICAO term CURRENT FLIGHT PLAN.)

CRITICAL ENGINE– The engine which, upon failure, would most adversely affect the performance or handling qualities of an aircraft.

CROSS (FIX) AT (ALTITUDE)– Used by ATC when a specific altitude restriction at a specified fix is required.

CROSS (FIX) AT OR ABOVE (ALTITUDE)– Used by ATC when an altitude restriction at a specified fix is required. It does not prohibit the aircraft from crossing the fix at a higher altitude than specified; however, the higher altitude may not be one that will violate a succeeding altitude restriction or altitude assignment.

(See ALTITUDE RESTRICTION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CROSS (FIX) AT OR BELOW (ALTITUDE)– Used by ATC when a maximum crossing altitude at a specific fix is required. It does not prohibit the aircraft from crossing the fix at a lower altitude; however, it must be at or above the minimum IFR altitude.

(See ALTITUDE RESTRICTION.)
(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDES.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

CROSSWIND–

a. When used concerning the traffic pattern, the word means “crosswind leg.”

(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

b. When used concerning wind conditions, the word means a wind not parallel to the runway or the path of an aircraft.

(See CROSSWIND COMPONENT.)

CROSSWIND COMPONENT– The wind component measured in knots at 90 degrees to the longitudinal axis of the runway.

CRUISE– Used in an ATC clearance to authorize a pilot to conduct flight at any altitude from the minimum IFR altitude up to and including the altitude specified in the clearance. The pilot may level off at any intermediate altitude within this block of airspace. Climb/descent within the block is to be made at the discretion of the pilot. However, once the pilot starts descent and verbally reports leaving an altitude in the block, he/she may not return to that altitude without additional ATC clearance. Further, it is approval for the pilot to proceed to and make an approach at destination airport and can be used in conjunction with:

a. An airport clearance limit at locations with a standard/special instrument approach procedure. The CFRs require that if an instrument letdown to an airport is necessary, the pilot shall make the letdown in accordance with a standard/special instrument approach procedure for that airport, or

b. An airport clearance limit at locations that are within/below/outside controlled airspace and without a standard/special instrument approach procedure. Such a clearance is NOT AUTHORIZATION for the pilot to descend under IFR conditions below the applicable minimum IFR altitude nor does it imply that ATC is exercising control over aircraft in Class G airspace; however, it provides a means for the aircraft to proceed to destination airport, descend, and land in accordance with applicable CFRs governing VFR flight operations. Also, this provides search and rescue protection until such time as the IFR flight plan is closed.

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

CRUISE CLIMB– A climb technique employed by aircraft, usually at a constant power setting, resulting in an increase of altitude as the aircraft weight decreases.

D

D-ATIS–

(See DIGITAL-AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

DA [ICAO]–

(See ICAO Term DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT.)

DAIR–

(See DIRECT ALTITUDE AND IDENTITY READOUT.)

DANGER AREA [ICAO]– An airspace of defined dimensions within which activities dangerous to the flight of aircraft may exist at specified times.

Note: The term “Danger Area” is not used in reference to areas within the United States or any of its possessions or territories.

DAS–

(See DELAY ASSIGNMENT.)

DATA BLOCK–

(See ALPHANUMERIC DISPLAY.)

DEAD RECKONING– Dead reckoning, as applied to flying, is the navigation of an airplane solely by means of computations based on airspeed, course, heading, wind direction, and speed, groundspeed, and elapsed time.

DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT [ICAO]– A specified altitude or height (A/H) in the precision approach at which a missed approach must be initiated if the required visual reference to continue the approach has not been established.

Note 1: Decision altitude [DA] is referenced to mean sea level [MSL] and decision height [DH] is referenced to the threshold elevation.

Note 2: The required visual reference means that section of the visual aids or of the approach area which should have been in view for sufficient time for the pilot to have made an assessment of the aircraft position and rate of change of position, in relation to the desired flight path.

DECISION HEIGHT– With respect to the operation of aircraft, means the height at which a decision must be made during an ILS, MLS, or PAR instrument approach to either continue the approach or to execute a missed approach.

(See ICAO term DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT.)

DECODER– The device used to decipher signals received from ATCRBS transponders to effect their display as select codes.

(See CODES.)

(See RADAR.)

DEFENSE VISUAL FLIGHT RULES– Rules applicable to flights within an ADIZ conducted under the visual flight rules in 14 CFR Part 91.

(See AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE.)

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 99.)

DELAY ASSIGNMENT (DAS)– Delays are distributed to aircraft based on the traffic management program parameters. The delay assignment is calculated in 15–minute increments and appears as a table in Traffic Flow Management System (TFMS).

DELAY INDEFINITE (REASON IF KNOWN) EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME)– Used by ATC to inform a pilot when an accurate estimate of the delay time and the reason for the delay cannot immediately be determined; e.g., a disabled aircraft on the runway, terminal or center area saturation, weather below landing minimums, etc.

(See EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME).)

DELAY TIME– The amount of time that the arrival must lose to cross the meter fix at the assigned meter fix time. This is the difference between ACLT and VTA.

DEPARTURE CENTER– The ARTCC having jurisdiction for the airspace that generates a flight to the impacted airport.

DEPARTURE CONTROL– A function of an approach control facility providing air traffic control service for departing IFR and, under certain conditions, VFR aircraft.

(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

(Refer to AIM.)

DEPARTURE SEQUENCING PROGRAM– A program designed to assist in achieving a specified interval over a common point for departures.

DEPARTURE TIME– The time an aircraft becomes airborne.

DESCENT SPEED ADJUSTMENTS– Speed deceleration calculations made to determine an accurate VTA. These calculations start at the transition point and use arrival speed segments to the vertex.

DESIRED COURSE–

a. True– A predetermined desired course direction to be followed (measured in degrees from true north).

b. Magnetic– A predetermined desired course direction to be followed (measured in degrees from local magnetic north).

DESIRED TRACK– The planned or intended track between two waypoints. It is measured in degrees from either magnetic or true north. The instantaneous angle may change from point to point along the great circle track between waypoints.

DETRESFA (DISTRESS PHASE) [ICAO]– The code word used to designate an emergency phase wherein there is reasonable certainty that an aircraft and its occupants are threatened by grave and imminent danger or require immediate assistance.

DEVIATIONS–

a. A departure from a current clearance, such as an off course maneuver to avoid weather or turbulence.

b. Where specifically authorized in the CFRs and requested by the pilot, ATC may permit pilots to deviate from certain regulations.

DH–

(See DECISION HEIGHT.)

DH [ICAO]–

(See ICAO Term DECISION ALTITUDE/ DECISION HEIGHT.)

DIGITAL-AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE (D-ATIS)– The service provides text messages to aircraft, airlines, and other users outside the standard reception range of conventional ATIS via landline and data link communications to the cockpit. Also, the service provides a computer–synthesized voice message that can be transmitted to all aircraft within range of existing transmitters. The Terminal Data Link System (TDLS) D-ATIS application uses weather inputs from local automated weather sources or manually entered meteorological data together with preprogrammed menus to provide standard information to users. Airports with D-ATIS capability are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory.

DIGITAL TARGET– A computer–generated symbol representing an aircraft's position, based on a primary return or radar beacon reply, shown on a digital display.

DIGITAL TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEM (DTAS)– A system where digital radar and beacon data is presented on digital displays and the operational program monitors the system performance on a real–time basis.

DIGITIZED TARGET– A computer–generated indication shown on an analog radar display resulting from a primary radar return or a radar beacon reply.

DIRECT– Straight line flight between two navigational aids, fixes, points, or any combination thereof. When used by pilots in describing off-airway routes, points defining direct route segments become compulsory reporting points unless the aircraft is under radar contact.

DIRECT ALTITUDE AND IDENTITY READOUT– The DAIR System is a modification to the AN/TPX-42 Interrogator System. The Navy has two adaptations of the DAIR System-Carrier Air Traffic Control Direct Altitude and Identification Readout System for Aircraft Carriers and Radar Air Traffic Control Facility Direct Altitude and Identity Readout System for land-based terminal operations. The DAIR detects, tracks, and predicts secondary radar aircraft targets. Targets are displayed by means of computer-generated symbols and alphanumeric characters depicting flight identification, altitude, ground speed, and flight plan data. The DAIR System is capable of interfacing with ARTCCs.

DIRECTLY BEHIND– An aircraft is considered to be operating directly behind when it is following the actual flight path of the lead aircraft over the surface of the earth except when applying wake turbulence separation criteria.

DISCRETE BEACON CODE–

(See DISCRETE CODE.)

DISCRETE CODE– As used in the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS), any one of the 4096 selectable Mode 3/A aircraft transponder codes except those ending in zero zero; e.g., discrete codes: 0010, 1201, 2317, 7777; nondiscrete codes: 0100, 1200, 7700. Nondiscrete codes are normally reserved for radar facilities that are not equipped with

discrete decoding capability and for other purposes such as emergencies (7700), VFR aircraft (1200), etc.
(See RADAR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

DISCRETE FREQUENCY– A separate radio frequency for use in direct pilot-controller communications in air traffic control which reduces frequency congestion by controlling the number of aircraft operating on a particular frequency at one time. Discrete frequencies are normally designated for each control sector in en route/terminal ATC facilities. Discrete frequencies are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory and the DOD FLIP IFR En Route Supplement.
(See CONTROL SECTOR.)

DISPLACED THRESHOLD– A threshold that is located at a point on the runway other than the designated beginning of the runway.
(See THRESHOLD.)
(Refer to AIM.)

DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT– Equipment (airborne and ground) used to measure, in nautical miles, the slant range distance of an aircraft from the DME navigational aid.
(See MICROWAVE LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See TACAN.)
(See VORTAC.)

DISTRESS– A condition of being threatened by serious and/or imminent danger and of requiring immediate assistance.

DIVE BRAKES–
(See SPEED BRAKES.)

DIVERSE VECTOR AREA– In a radar environment, that area in which a prescribed departure route is not required as the only suitable route to avoid obstacles. The area in which random radar vectors below the MVA/MIA, established in accordance with the TERPS criteria for diverse departures, obstacles and terrain avoidance, may be issued to departing aircraft.

DIVERSION (DVRSN)– Flights that are required to land at other than their original destination for reasons beyond the control of the pilot/company, e.g. periods of significant weather.

DME–
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)

DME FIX– A geographical position determined by reference to a navigational aid which provides distance and azimuth information. It is defined by a specific distance in nautical miles and a radial, azimuth, or course (i.e., localizer) in degrees magnetic from that aid.
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)
(See FIX.)
(See MICROWAVE LANDING SYSTEM.)

DME SEPARATION– Spacing of aircraft in terms of distances (nautical miles) determined by reference to distance measuring equipment (DME).
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)

DOD FLIP– Department of Defense Flight Information Publications used for flight planning, en route, and terminal operations. FLIP is produced by the National Geospatial–Intelligence Agency (NGA) for world-wide use. United States Government Flight Information Publications (en route charts and instrument approach procedure charts) are incorporated in DOD FLIP for use in the National Airspace System (NAS).

DOMESTIC AIRSPACE– Airspace which overlies the continental land mass of the United States plus Hawaii and U.S. possessions. Domestic airspace extends to 12 miles offshore.

DOWNBURST– A strong downdraft which induces an outburst of damaging winds on or near the ground. Damaging winds, either straight or curved, are highly divergent. The sizes of downbursts vary from 1/2 mile or less to more than 10 miles. An intense downburst often causes widespread damage. Damaging winds, lasting 5 to 30 minutes, could reach speeds as high as 120 knots.

DOWNWIND LEG–
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

DP–
(See INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)

DRAG CHUTE– A parachute device installed on certain aircraft which is deployed on landing roll to assist in deceleration of the aircraft.

DSP–
(See DEPARTURE SEQUENCING PROGRAM.)

DT–
(See DELAY TIME.)

DTAS–
(See DIGITAL TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEM.)

DUE REGARD– A phase of flight wherein an aircraft commander of a State-operated aircraft assumes responsibility to separate his/her aircraft from all other aircraft.

(See also FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 1–2–1, WORD MEANINGS.)

DUTY RUNWAY–

(See RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY.)

DVA–

(See DIVERSE VECTOR AREA.)

DVFR–

(See DEFENSE VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

DVFR FLIGHT PLAN– A flight plan filed for a VFR aircraft which intends to operate in airspace within which the ready identification, location, and control of aircraft are required in the interest of national security.

DVRSN–

(See DIVERSION.)

DYNAMIC– Continuous review, evaluation, and change to meet demands.

DYNAMIC RESTRICTIONS– Those restrictions imposed by the local facility on an “as needed” basis to manage unpredictable fluctuations in traffic demands.

G

GATE HOLD PROCEDURES– Procedures at selected airports to hold aircraft at the gate or other ground location whenever departure delays exceed or are anticipated to exceed 15 minutes. The sequence for departure will be maintained in accordance with initial call-up unless modified by flow control restrictions. Pilots should monitor the ground control/clearance delivery frequency for engine start/taxi advisories or new proposed start/taxi time if the delay changes.

GBT–
(See GROUND–BASED TRANSCEIVER.)

GCA–
(See GROUND CONTROLLED APPROACH.)

GDP–
(See GROUND DELAY PROGRAM.)

GENERAL AVIATION– That portion of civil aviation which encompasses all facets of aviation except air carriers holding a certificate of public convenience and necessity from the Civil Aeronautics Board and large aircraft commercial operators.
(See ICAO term GENERAL AVIATION.)

GENERAL AVIATION [ICAO]– All civil aviation operations other than scheduled air services and nonscheduled air transport operations for remuneration or hire.

GEO MAP– The digitized map markings associated with the ASR-9 Radar System.

GLIDEPATH–
(See GLIDESLOPE.)

GLIDEPATH [ICAO]– A descent profile determined for vertical guidance during a final approach.

GLIDEPATH INTERCEPT ALTITUDE–
(See GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE.)

GLIDESLOPE– Provides vertical guidance for aircraft during approach and landing. The glideslope/glidepath is based on the following:

a. Electronic components emitting signals which provide vertical guidance by reference to airborne instruments during instrument approaches such as ILS/MLS, or

b. Visual ground aids, such as VASI, which provide vertical guidance for a VFR approach or for the visual portion of an instrument approach and landing.

c. PAR. Used by ATC to inform an aircraft making a PAR approach of its vertical position (elevation) relative to the descent profile.
(See ICAO term GLIDEPATH.)

GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE– The minimum altitude to intercept the glideslope/path on a precision approach. The intersection of the published intercept altitude with the glideslope/path, designated on Government charts by the lightning bolt symbol, is the precision FAF; however, when the approach chart shows an alternative lower glideslope intercept altitude, and ATC directs a lower altitude, the resultant lower intercept position is then the FAF.
(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM (GNSS) [ICAO]– GNSS refers collectively to the worldwide positioning, navigation, and timing determination capability available from one or more satellite constellation in conjunction with a network of ground stations.

GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE (GNSS MEA)– The minimum en route IFR altitude on a published ATS route or route segment which assures acceptable Global Navigation Satellite System reception and meets obstacle clearance requirements.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 95.)

GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS)– GPS refers to the worldwide positioning, navigation and timing determination capability available from the U.S. satellite constellation. The service provided by GPS for civil use is defined in the GPS Standard Positioning System Performance Standard. GPS is composed of space, control, and user elements.

GNSS [ICAO]–
(See GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM.)

GNSS MEA–

(See GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

GO AHEAD– Proceed with your message. Not to be used for any other purpose.

GO AROUND– Instructions for a pilot to abandon his/her approach to landing. Additional instructions may follow. Unless otherwise advised by ATC, a VFR aircraft or an aircraft conducting visual approach should overfly the runway while climbing to traffic pattern altitude and enter the traffic pattern via the crosswind leg. A pilot on an IFR flight plan making an instrument approach should execute the published missed approach procedure or proceed as instructed by ATC; e.g., "Go around" (additional instructions if required).

(See LOW APPROACH.)

(See MISSED APPROACH.)

GPD–

(See GRAPHIC PLAN DISPLAY.)

GPS–

(See GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM.)

GRAPHIC PLAN DISPLAY (GPD)– A view available with URET that provides a graphic display of aircraft, traffic, and notification of predicted conflicts. Graphic routes for Current Plans and Trial Plans are displayed upon controller request.

(See USER REQUEST EVALUATION TOOL.)

GROUND–BASED TRANSCEIVER (GBT)– The ground–based transmitter/receiver (transceiver) receives automatic dependent surveillance–broadcast messages, which are forwarded to an air traffic control facility for processing and display with other radar targets on the plan position indicator (radar display).

(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE-BROADCAST.)

GROUND CLUTTER– A pattern produced on the radar scope by ground returns which may degrade other radar returns in the affected area. The effect of ground clutter is minimized by the use of moving target indicator (MTI) circuits in the radar equipment resulting in a radar presentation which displays only targets which are in motion.

(See CLUTTER.)

GROUND COMMUNICATION OUTLET (GCO)– An unstaffed, remotely controlled, ground/ground communications facility. Pilots at uncontrolled airports may contact ATC and FSS via VHF to a telephone connection to obtain an instrument clearance or close a VFR or IFR flight plan. They may also get an updated weather briefing prior to takeoff. Pilots will use four "key clicks" on the VHF radio to contact the appropriate ATC facility or six "key clicks" to contact the FSS. The GCO system is intended to be used only on the ground.

GROUND CONTROLLED APPROACH– A radar approach system operated from the ground by air traffic control personnel transmitting instructions to the pilot by radio. The approach may be conducted with surveillance radar (ASR) only or with both surveillance and precision approach radar (PAR). Usage of the term "GCA" by pilots is discouraged except when referring to a GCA facility. Pilots should specifically request a "PAR" approach when a precision radar approach is desired or request an "ASR" or "surveillance" approach when a nonprecision radar approach is desired.

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

GROUND DELAY PROGRAM (GDP)– A traffic management process administered by the ATCSCC; when aircraft are held on the ground. The purpose of the program is to support the TM mission and limit airborne holding. It is a flexible program and may be implemented in various forms depending upon the needs of the AT system. Ground delay programs provide for equitable assignment of delays to all system users.

GROUND SPEED– The speed of an aircraft relative to the surface of the earth.

GROUND STOP (GS)– The GS is a process that requires aircraft that meet a specific criteria to remain on the ground. The criteria may be airport specific, airspace specific, or equipment specific; for example, all departures to San Francisco, or all departures entering Yorktown sector, or all Category I and II aircraft going to Charlotte. GSs normally occur with little or no warning.

GROUND VISIBILITY–

(See VISIBILITY.)

GS–

(See GROUND STOP.)

I

I SAY AGAIN– The message will be repeated.

IAF–
(See INITIAL APPROACH FIX.)

IAP–
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

IAWP– Initial Approach Waypoint

ICAO–
(See ICAO Term INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION.)

ICING– The accumulation of airframe ice.

Types of icing are:

a. Rime Ice– Rough, milky, opaque ice formed by the instantaneous freezing of small supercooled water droplets.

b. Clear Ice– A glossy, clear, or translucent ice formed by the relatively slow freezing or large supercooled water droplets.

c. Mixed– A mixture of clear ice and rime ice.

Intensity of icing:

a. Trace– Ice becomes perceptible. Rate of accumulation is slightly greater than the rate of sublimation. Deicing/anti-icing equipment is not utilized unless encountered for an extended period of time (over 1 hour).

b. Light– The rate of accumulation may create a problem if flight is prolonged in this environment (over 1 hour). Occasional use of deicing/anti-icing equipment removes/prevents accumulation. It does not present a problem if the deicing/anti-icing equipment is used.

c. Moderate– The rate of accumulation is such that even short encounters become potentially hazardous and use of deicing/anti-icing equipment or flight diversion is necessary.

d. Severe– The rate of accumulation is such that deicing/anti-icing equipment fails to reduce or control the hazard. Immediate flight diversion is necessary.

IDENT– A request for a pilot to activate the aircraft transponder identification feature. This will help the controller to confirm an aircraft identity or to identify an aircraft.
(Refer to AIM.)

IDENT FEATURE– The special feature in the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS) equipment. It is used to immediately distinguish one displayed beacon target from other beacon targets.
(See IDENT.)

IF–
(See INTERMEDIATE FIX.)

IFIM–
(See INTERNATIONAL FLIGHT INFORMATION MANUAL.)

IF NO TRANSMISSION RECEIVED FOR (TIME)– Used by ATC in radar approaches to prefix procedures which should be followed by the pilot in event of lost communications.
(See LOST COMMUNICATIONS.)

IFR–
(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)

IFR AIRCRAFT– An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with instrument flight rules.

IFR CONDITIONS– Weather conditions below the minimum for flight under visual flight rules.
(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

IFR DEPARTURE PROCEDURE–
(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

IFR FLIGHT–
(See IFR AIRCRAFT.)

IFR LANDING MINIMUMS–
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES (IR)– Routes used by the Department of Defense and associated Reserve and Air Guard units for the purpose of conducting low-altitude navigation and tactical training in both IFR and VFR weather conditions below 10,000 feet MSL at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.

IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES– Title 14 Code of Federal

Regulations Part 91, prescribes standard takeoff rules for certain civil users. At some airports, obstructions or other factors require the establishment of nonstandard takeoff minimums, departure procedures, or both to assist pilots in avoiding obstacles during climb to the minimum en route altitude. Those airports are listed in FAA/DOD Instrument Approach Procedures (IAPs) Charts under a section entitled "IFR Takeoff Minimums and Departure Procedures." The FAA/DOD IAP chart legend illustrates the symbol used to alert the pilot to nonstandard takeoff minimums and departure procedures. When departing IFR from such airports or from any airports where there are no departure procedures, DPs, or ATC facilities available, pilots should advise ATC of any departure limitations. Controllers may query a pilot to determine acceptable departure directions, turns, or headings after takeoff. Pilots should be familiar with the departure procedures and must assure that their aircraft can meet or exceed any specified climb gradients.

IF/IAWP– Intermediate Fix/Initial Approach Waypoint. The waypoint where the final approach course of a T approach meets the crossbar of the T. When designated (in conjunction with a TAA) this waypoint will be used as an IAWP when approaching the airport from certain directions, and as an IFWP when beginning the approach from another IAWP.

IFWP– Intermediate Fix Waypoint

ILS–
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)

ILS CATEGORIES– 1. Category I. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 200 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,800 feet.– 2. Special Authorization Category I. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 150 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,400 feet, HUD to DH. 3. Category II. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 100 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,200 feet (with autoland or HUD to touchdown and noted on authorization, RVR 1,000 feet).– 4. Special Authorization Category II with Reduced Lighting. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 100 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,200 feet with autoland or HUD to touchdown and noted on authorization (no touchdown zone and centerline lighting are required).– 5. Category III:

a. IIIA.–An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and with runway visual range of not less than 700 feet.

b. IIIB.–An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and with runway visual range of not less than 150 feet.

c. IIIC.–An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and without runway visual range minimum.

ILS PRM APPROACH– An instrument landing system (ILS) approach conducted to parallel runways whose extended centerlines are separated by less than 4,300 feet and at least 3,000 feet where closely spaced independent approaches are permitted. Also used in conjunction with an LDA PRM, or RNAV (GPS) PRM approach to conduct Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approach (SOIA) operations. No Transgression Zone (NTZ) monitoring is required to conduct these approaches. When the runway spacing is less than 3,600 feet, the NTZ must be monitored by a Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) or other high update rate surveillance system.
(Refer to AIM)

IM–
(See INNER MARKER.)

IMC–
(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

IMMEDIATELY– Used by ATC or pilots when such action compliance is required to avoid an imminent situation.

INCERFA (Uncertainty Phase) [ICAO]– A situation wherein uncertainty exists as to the safety of an aircraft and its occupants.

INCREASE SPEED TO (SPEED)–
(See SPEED ADJUSTMENT.)

INERTIAL NAVIGATION SYSTEM– An RNAV system which is a form of self-contained navigation.
(See Area Navigation/RNAV.)

INFLIGHT REFUELING–
(See AERIAL REFUELING.)

INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY– (See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

INFORMATION REQUEST– A request originated by an FSS for information concerning an overdue VFR aircraft.

INITIAL APPROACH FIX– The fixes depicted on instrument approach procedure charts that identify the beginning of the initial approach segment(s). (See FIX.) (See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT– (See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]– That segment of an instrument approach procedure between the initial approach fix and the intermediate approach fix or, where applicable, the final approach fix or point.

INLAND NAVIGATION FACILITY– A navigation aid on a North American Route at which the common route and/or the noncommon route begins or ends.

INNER MARKER– A marker beacon used with an ILS (CAT II) precision approach located between the middle marker and the end of the ILS runway, transmitting a radiation pattern keyed at six dots per second and indicating to the pilot, both aurally and visually, that he/she is at the designated decision height (DH), normally 100 feet above the touchdown zone elevation, on the ILS CAT II approach. It also marks progress during a CAT III approach. (See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.) (Refer to AIM.)

INNER MARKER BEACON– (See INNER MARKER.)

INREQ– (See INFORMATION REQUEST.)

INS– (See INERTIAL NAVIGATION SYSTEM.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH– (See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE– A series of predetermined maneuvers for the orderly transfer of an aircraft under instrument flight conditions from the beginning of the initial approach to a landing or to a point from which a landing may be made visually. It is prescribed and approved for a specific airport by competent authority. (See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.) (Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.) (Refer to AIM.)

a. U.S. civil standard instrument approach procedures are approved by the FAA as prescribed under 14 CFR Part 97 and are available for public use.

b. U.S. military standard instrument approach procedures are approved and published by the Department of Defense.

c. Special instrument approach procedures are approved by the FAA for individual operators but are not published in 14 CFR Part 97 for public use. (See ICAO term INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE [ICAO]– A series of predetermined maneuvers by reference to flight instruments with specified protection from obstacles from the initial approach fix, or where applicable, from the beginning of a defined arrival route to a point from which a landing can be completed and thereafter, if a landing is not completed, to a position at which holding or en route obstacle clearance criteria apply.

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURES CHARTS– (See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE (DP)– A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) departure procedure published for pilot use, in graphic or textual format, that provides obstruction clearance from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. There are two types of DP, Obstacle Departure Procedure (ODP), printed either textually or graphically, and, Standard Instrument Departure (SID), which is always printed graphically. (See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.) (See OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.) (See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURES.) (Refer to AIM.)

INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE (DP) CHARTS– (See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES– Rules governing the procedures for conducting instrument flight. Also

a term used by pilots and controllers to indicate type of flight plan.

(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)

(Refer to AIM.)

INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES [ICAO]– A set of rules governing the conduct of flight under instrument meteorological conditions.

INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM– A precision instrument approach system which normally consists of the following electronic components and visual aids:

a. Localizer.

(See LOCALIZER.)

b. Glideslope.

(See GLIDESLOPE.)

c. Outer Marker.

(See OUTER MARKER.)

d. Middle Marker.

(See MIDDLE MARKER.)

e. Approach Lights.

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

(Refer to AIM.)

INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS– Meteorological conditions expressed in terms of visibility, distance from cloud, and ceiling less than the minima specified for visual meteorological conditions.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)

(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

INSTRUMENT RUNWAY– A runway equipped with electronic and visual navigation aids for which a precision or nonprecision approach procedure having straight-in landing minimums has been approved.

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT RUNWAY.)

INSTRUMENT RUNWAY [ICAO]– One of the following types of runways intended for the operation of aircraft using instrument approach procedures:

a. Nonprecision Approach Runway–An instrument runway served by visual aids and a nonvisual aid providing at least directional guidance adequate for a straight-in approach.

b. Precision Approach Runway, Category I–An instrument runway served by ILS and visual aids intended for operations down to 60 m (200 feet) decision height and down to an RVR of the order of 800 m.

c. Precision Approach Runway, Category II–An instrument runway served by ILS and visual aids intended for operations down to 30 m (100 feet) decision height and down to an RVR of the order of 400 m.

d. Precision Approach Runway, Category III–An instrument runway served by ILS to and along the surface of the runway and:

1. Intended for operations down to an RVR of the order of 200 m (no decision height being applicable) using visual aids during the final phase of landing;

2. Intended for operations down to an RVR of the order of 50 m (no decision height being applicable) using visual aids for taxiing;

3. Intended for operations without reliance on visual reference for landing or taxiing.

Note 1: See Annex 10 Volume I, Part I, Chapter 3, for related ILS specifications.

Note 2: Visual aids need not necessarily be matched to the scale of nonvisual aids provided. The criterion for the selection of visual aids is the conditions in which operations are intended to be conducted.

INTEGRITY– The ability of a system to provide timely warnings to users when the system should not be used for navigation.

INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT–

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]– That segment of an instrument approach procedure between either the intermediate approach fix and the final approach fix or point, or between the end of a reversal, race track or dead reckoning track procedure and the final approach fix or point, as appropriate.

INTERMEDIATE FIX– The fix that identifies the beginning of the intermediate approach segment of an instrument approach procedure. The fix is not normally identified on the instrument approach chart as an intermediate fix (IF).

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INTERMEDIATE LANDING– On the rare occasion that this option is requested, it should be approved. The departure center, however, must advise the ATCSCC so that the appropriate delay is carried over and assigned at the intermediate airport. An intermediate landing airport within the arrival center will not be accepted without coordination with and the approval of the ATCSCC.

INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT– Relating to international flight, it means:

a. An airport of entry which has been designated by the Secretary of Treasury or Commissioner of Customs as an international airport for customs service.

b. A landing rights airport at which specific permission to land must be obtained from customs authorities in advance of contemplated use.

c. Airports designated under the Convention on International Civil Aviation as an airport for use by international commercial air transport and/or international general aviation.

(See ICAO term INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT.)
(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)
(Refer to IFIM.)

INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT [ICAO]– Any airport designated by the Contracting State in whose territory it is situated as an airport of entry and departure for international air traffic, where the formalities incident to customs, immigration, public health, animal and plant quarantine and similar procedures are carried out.

INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION [ICAO]– A specialized agency of the United Nations whose objective is to develop the principles and techniques of international air navigation and to foster planning and development of international civil air transport.

a. Regions include:

1. African-Indian Ocean Region
2. Caribbean Region
3. European Region
4. Middle East/Asia Region
5. North American Region
6. North Atlantic Region
7. Pacific Region
8. South American Region

INTERNATIONAL FLIGHT INFORMATION MANUAL– A publication designed primarily as a pilot's preflight planning guide for flights into foreign airspace and for flights returning to the U.S. from foreign locations.

INTERROGATOR– The ground-based surveillance radar beacon transmitter-receiver, which normally scans in synchronism with a primary radar, transmitting discrete radio signals which repetitiously request all transponders on the mode being used to reply. The replies received are mixed with the primary radar returns and displayed on the same plan position indicator (radar scope). Also, applied to the airborne element of the TACAN/DME system.

(See TRANSPONDER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

INTERSECTING RUNWAYS– Two or more runways which cross or meet within their lengths.

(See INTERSECTION.)

INTERSECTION–

a. A point defined by any combination of courses, radials, or bearings of two or more navigational aids.

b. Used to describe the point where two runways, a runway and a taxiway, or two taxiways cross or meet.

INTERSECTION DEPARTURE– A departure from any runway intersection except the end of the runway.

(See INTERSECTION.)

INTERSECTION TAKEOFF–

(See INTERSECTION DEPARTURE.)

IR–

(See IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

L

LAA–
(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)

LAAS–
(See LOW ALTITUDE ALERT SYSTEM.)

LAHSO– An acronym for "Land and Hold Short Operation." These operations include landing and holding short of an intersecting runway, a taxiway, a predetermined point, or an approach/departure flightpath.

LAHSO-DRY– Land and hold short operations on runways that are dry.

LAHSO-WET– Land and hold short operations on runways that are wet (but not contaminated).

LAND AND HOLD SHORT OPERATIONS– Operations which include simultaneous takeoffs and landings and/or simultaneous landings when a landing aircraft is able and is instructed by the controller to hold-short of the intersecting runway/taxiway or designated hold-short point. Pilots are expected to promptly inform the controller if the hold short clearance cannot be accepted.
(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LANDING AREA– Any locality either on land, water, or structures, including airports/heliports and intermediate landing fields, which is used, or intended to be used, for the landing and takeoff of aircraft whether or not facilities are provided for the shelter, servicing, or for receiving or discharging passengers or cargo.
(See ICAO term LANDING AREA.)

LANDING AREA [ICAO]– That part of a movement area intended for the landing or take-off of aircraft.

LANDING DIRECTION INDICATOR– A device which visually indicates the direction in which landings and takeoffs should be made.
(See TETRAHEDRON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE (LDA)– The runway length declared available and suitable for a landing airplane.
(See ICAO term LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE [ICAO]– The length of runway which is declared available and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane landing.

LANDING MINIMUMS– The minimum visibility prescribed for landing a civil aircraft while using an instrument approach procedure. The minimum applies with other limitations set forth in 14 CFR Part 91 with respect to the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) or Decision Height (DH) prescribed in the instrument approach procedures as follows:

a. Straight-in landing minimums. A statement of MDA and visibility, or DH and visibility, required for a straight-in landing on a specified runway, or

b. Circling minimums. A statement of MDA and visibility required for the circle-to-land maneuver.

Note: Descent below the established MDA or DH is not authorized during an approach unless the aircraft is in a position from which a normal approach to the runway of intended landing can be made and adequate visual reference to required visual cues is maintained.

(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)
(See DECISION HEIGHT.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING.)
(See VISIBILITY.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

LANDING ROLL– The distance from the point of touchdown to the point where the aircraft can be brought to a stop or exit the runway.

LANDING SEQUENCE– The order in which aircraft are positioned for landing.
(See APPROACH SEQUENCE.)

LAST ASSIGNED ALTITUDE– The last altitude/flight level assigned by ATC and acknowledged by the pilot.
(See MAINTAIN.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

LATERAL NAVIGATION (LNAV)– A function of area navigation (RNAV) equipment which calculates, displays, and provides lateral guidance to a profile or path.

LATERAL SEPARATION– The lateral spacing of aircraft at the same altitude by requiring operation on different routes or in different geographical locations.
(See SEPARATION.)

LDA–
(See LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID.)
(See LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)
(See ICAO Term LANDING DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

LF–
(See LOW FREQUENCY.)

LIGHTED AIRPORT– An airport where runway and obstruction lighting is available.
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LIGHT GUN– A handheld directional light signaling device which emits a brilliant narrow beam of white, green, or red light as selected by the tower controller. The color and type of light transmitted can be used to approve or disapprove anticipated pilot actions where radio communication is not available. The light gun is used for controlling traffic operating in the vicinity of the airport and on the airport movement area.
(Refer to AIM.)

LINE UP AND WAIT (LUAW)– Used by ATC to inform a pilot to taxi onto the departure runway to line up and wait. It is not authorization for takeoff. It is used when takeoff clearance cannot immediately be issued because of traffic or other reasons.
(See CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.)

LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY (LAA)– A service provided by facilities, which are located on the landing airport, have a discrete ground–to–air communication frequency or the tower frequency when the tower is closed, automated weather reporting with voice broadcasting, and a continuous ASOS/AWSS/AWOS data display, other continuous direct reading instruments, or manual observations available to the specialist.
(See AIRPORT ADVISORY AREA.)

LOCAL TRAFFIC– Aircraft operating in the traffic pattern or within sight of the tower, or aircraft known to be departing or arriving from flight in local practice areas, or aircraft executing practice instrument approaches at the airport.
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

LOCALIZER– The component of an ILS which provides course guidance to the runway.
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See ICAO term LOCALIZER COURSE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

LOCALIZER COURSE [ICAO]– The locus of points, in any given horizontal plane, at which the DDM (difference in depth of modulation) is zero.

LOCALIZER OFFSET– An angular offset of the localizer from the runway extended centerline in a direction away from the no transgression zone (NTZ) that increases the normal operating zone (NOZ) width. An offset requires a 50 foot increase in DH and is not authorized for CAT II and CAT III approaches.

LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID– A NAVAID used for nonprecision instrument approaches with utility and accuracy comparable to a localizer but which is not a part of a complete ILS and is not aligned with the runway.
(Refer to AIM.)

LOCALIZER TYPE DIRECTIONAL AID (LDA) PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR (PRM) APPROACH – An approach, which includes a glidslope, used in conjunction with an ILS PRM or RNAV (GPS) PRM approach to an adjacent runway to conduct Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approaches (SOIA) to parallel runways whose centerlines are separated by less than 3,000 feet and at least 750 feet. NTZ monitoring is required to conduct these approaches. When the approach course spacing is less than 3,600 feet at the Missed Approach Point (MAP), the use of a PRM or other high update rate surveillance system in order to conduct simultaneous independent approaches is required.
(See SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACH (SOIA).)
(Refer to AIM)

LOCALIZER USABLE DISTANCE– The maximum distance from the localizer transmitter at a specified altitude, as verified by flight inspection, at which reliable course information is continuously received.
(Refer to AIM.)

LOCATOR [ICAO]– An LM/MF NDB used as an aid to final approach.
Note: A locator usually has an average radius of rated coverage of between 18.5 and 46.3 km (10 and 25 NM).

LONG RANGE NAVIGATION–

(See LORAN.)

LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION– The longitudinal spacing of aircraft at the same altitude by a minimum distance expressed in units of time or miles.

(See SEPARATION.)

(Refer to AIM.)

LORAN– An electronic navigational system by which hyperbolic lines of position are determined by measuring the difference in the time of reception of synchronized pulse signals from two fixed transmitters. Loran A operates in the 1750-1950 kHz frequency band. Loran C and D operate in the 100-110 kHz frequency band. In 2010, the U.S. Coast Guard terminated all U.S. LORAN-C transmissions.

(Refer to AIM.)

LOST COMMUNICATIONS– Loss of the ability to communicate by radio. Aircraft are sometimes referred to as NORDO (No Radio). Standard pilot procedures are specified in 14 CFR Part 91. Radar controllers issue procedures for pilots to follow in the event of lost communications during a radar approach when weather reports indicate that an aircraft will likely encounter IFR weather conditions during the approach.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

(Refer to AIM.)

LOW ALTITUDE AIRWAY STRUCTURE– The network of airways serving aircraft operations up to but not including 18,000 feet MSL.

(See AIRWAY.)

(Refer to AIM.)

LOW ALTITUDE ALERT, CHECK YOUR ALTITUDE IMMEDIATELY–

(See SAFETY ALERT.)

LOW ALTITUDE ALERT SYSTEM– An automated function of the TPX-42 that alerts the controller when a Mode C transponder equipped aircraft on an IFR flight plan is below a predetermined minimum safe altitude. If requested by the pilot, Low Altitude Alert System monitoring is also available to VFR Mode C transponder equipped aircraft.

LOW APPROACH– An approach over an airport or runway following an instrument approach or a VFR approach including the go-around maneuver where the pilot intentionally does not make contact with the runway.

(Refer to AIM.)

LOW FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 30 and 300 kHz.

(Refer to AIM.)

LPV– A type of approach with vertical guidance (APV) based on WAAS, published on RNAV (GPS) approach charts. This procedure takes advantage of the precise lateral guidance available from WAAS. The minima is published as a decision altitude (DA).

LUAW–

(See LINE UP AND WAIT.)

N

NAS–

(See NATIONAL AIRSPACE SYSTEM.)

NATIONAL AIRSPACE SYSTEM– The common network of U.S. airspace; air navigation facilities, equipment and services, airports or landing areas; aeronautical charts, information and services; rules, regulations and procedures, technical information, and manpower and material. Included are system components shared jointly with the military.

NATIONAL BEACON CODE ALLOCATION PLAN AIRSPACE– Airspace over United States territory located within the North American continent between Canada and Mexico, including adjacent territorial waters outward to about boundaries of oceanic control areas (CTA)/Flight Information Regions (FIR).

(See FLIGHT INFORMATION REGION.)

NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA CENTER– A facility in Washington D.C., established by FAA to operate a central aeronautical information service for the collection, validation, and dissemination of aeronautical data in support of the activities of government, industry, and the aviation community. The information is published in the National Flight Data Digest.

(See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST.)

NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST– A daily (except weekends and Federal holidays) publication of flight information appropriate to aeronautical charts, aeronautical publications, Notices to Airmen, or other media serving the purpose of providing operational flight data essential to safe and efficient aircraft operations.

NATIONAL SEARCH AND RESCUE PLAN– An interagency agreement which provides for the effective utilization of all available facilities in all types of search and rescue missions.

NAVAID–

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

NAVAID CLASSES– VOR, VORTAC, and TACAN aids are classed according to their operational use. The three classes of NAVAIDs are:

a. T– Terminal.

b. L– Low altitude.

c. H– High altitude.

Note: The normal service range for T, L, and H class aids is found in the AIM. Certain operational requirements make it necessary to use some of these aids at greater service ranges than specified. Extended range is made possible through flight inspection determinations. Some aids also have lesser service range due to location, terrain, frequency protection, etc. Restrictions to service range are listed in Airport/Facility Directory.

NAVIGABLE AIRSPACE– Airspace at and above the minimum flight altitudes prescribed in the CFRs including airspace needed for safe takeoff and landing.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

NAVIGATION REFERENCE SYSTEM (NRS)– The NRS is a system of waypoints developed for use within the United States for flight planning and navigation without reference to ground based navigational aids. The NRS waypoints are located in a grid pattern along defined latitude and longitude lines. The initial use of the NRS will be in the high altitude environment in conjunction with the High Altitude Redesign initiative. The NRS waypoints are intended for use by aircraft capable of point–to–point navigation.

NAVIGATION SPECIFICATION [ICAO]– A set of aircraft and flight crew requirements needed to support performance–based navigation operations within a defined airspace. There are two kinds of navigation specifications:

a. RNP specification. A navigation specification based on area navigation that includes the requirement for performance monitoring and alerting, designated by the prefix RNP; e.g., RNP 4, RNP APCH.

b. RNAV specification. A navigation specification based on area navigation that does not include the requirement for performance monitoring and alerting, designated by the prefix RNAV; e.g., RNAV 5, RNAV 1.

Note: The Performance–based Navigation Manual (Doc 9613), Volume II contains detailed guidance on navigation specifications.

NAVIGATIONAL AID– Any visual or electronic device airborne or on the surface which provides point-to-point guidance information or position data to aircraft in flight.

(See AIR NAVIGATION FACILITY.)

NBCAP AIRSPACE–

(See NATIONAL BEACON CODE ALLOCATION PLAN AIRSPACE.)

NDB–

(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

NEGATIVE– "No," or "permission not granted," or "that is not correct."

NEGATIVE CONTACT– Used by pilots to inform ATC that:

a. Previously issued traffic is not in sight. It may be followed by the pilot's request for the controller to provide assistance in avoiding the traffic.

b. They were unable to contact ATC on a particular frequency.

NFDC–

(See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA CENTER.)

NFDD–

(See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST.)

NIGHT– The time between the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight, as published in the Air Almanac, converted to local time.

(See ICAO term NIGHT.)

NIGHT [ICAO]– The hours between the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight or such other period between sunset and sunrise as may be specified by the appropriate authority.

Note: Civil twilight ends in the evening when the center of the sun's disk is 6 degrees below the horizon and begins in the morning when the center of the sun's disk is 6 degrees below the horizon.

NO GYRO APPROACH– A radar approach/vector provided in case of a malfunctioning gyro-compass or directional gyro. Instead of providing the pilot with headings to be flown, the controller observes the radar track and issues control instructions "turn right/left" or "stop turn" as appropriate.

(Refer to AIM.)

NO GYRO VECTOR–

(See NO GYRO APPROACH.)

NO TRANSGRESSION ZONE (NTZ)– The NTZ is a 2,000 foot wide zone, located equidistant between parallel runway final approach courses in which flight is not allowed.

NONAPPROACH CONTROL TOWER– Authorizes aircraft to land or takeoff at the airport controlled by the tower or to transit the Class D airspace. The primary function of a nonapproach control tower is the sequencing of aircraft in the traffic pattern and on the landing area. Nonapproach control towers also separate aircraft operating under instrument flight rules clearances from approach controls and centers. They provide ground control services to aircraft, vehicles, personnel, and equipment on the airport movement area.

NONCOMMON ROUTE/PORTION– That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and a designated North American terminal.

NONCOMPOSITE SEPARATION– Separation in accordance with minima other than the composite separation minimum specified for the area concerned.

NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON– An L/MF or UHF radio beacon transmitting nondirectional signals whereby the pilot of an aircraft equipped with direction finding equipment can determine his/her bearing to or from the radio beacon and "home" on or track to or from the station. When the radio beacon is installed in conjunction with the Instrument Landing System marker, it is normally called a Compass Locator.

(See AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER.)
(See COMPASS LOCATOR.)

NONMOVEMENT AREAS– Taxiways and apron (ramp) areas not under the control of air traffic.

NONPRECISION APPROACH–

(See NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE– A standard instrument approach procedure in which no electronic glideslope is provided; e.g., VOR, TACAN, NDB, LOC, ASR, LDA, or SDF approaches.

NONRADAR– Precedes other terms and generally means without the use of radar, such as:

a. Nonradar Approach. Used to describe instrument approaches for which course guidance on final

PRECISION APPROACH RADAR– Radar equipment in some ATC facilities operated by the FAA and/or the military services at joint-use civil/military locations and separate military installations to detect and display azimuth, elevation, and range of aircraft on the final approach course to a runway. This equipment may be used to monitor certain nonradar approaches, but is primarily used to conduct a precision instrument approach (PAR) wherein the controller issues guidance instructions to the pilot based on the aircraft's position in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), the glidepath (elevation), and the distance (range) from the touchdown point on the runway as displayed on the radar scope.

Note: The abbreviation "PAR" is also used to denote preferential arrival routes in ARTCC computers.

(See GLIDEPATH.)

(See PAR.)

(See PREFERENTIAL ROUTES.)

(See ICAO term PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

(Refer to AIM.)

PRECISION APPROACH RADAR [ICAO]– Primary radar equipment used to determine the position of an aircraft during final approach, in terms of lateral and vertical deviations relative to a nominal approach path, and in range relative to touchdown.

Note: Precision approach radars are designed to enable pilots of aircraft to be given guidance by radio communication during the final stages of the approach to land.

PRECISION OBSTACLE FREE ZONE (POFZ)– An 800 foot wide by 200 foot long area centered on the runway centerline adjacent to the threshold designed to protect aircraft flying precision approaches from ground vehicles and other aircraft when ceiling is less than 250 feet or visibility is less than 3/4 statute mile (or runway visual range below 4,000 feet.)

PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR (PRM)– Provides air traffic controllers monitoring the NTZ during simultaneous close parallel approaches with high precision secondary surveillance data. A PRM is required for simultaneous independent operations when runway centerlines, or in the case of SOIA, final approach courses, are separated by less than 3,600 feet. High resolution color monitoring display (FMA) present (NTZ) surveillance track data to controllers along with detailed maps depicting approaches and no transgression zone.

(Refer to AIM)

PREDICTIVE WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM (PWS)– A self–contained system used onboard some aircraft to alert the flight crew to the presence of a potential wind shear. PWS systems typically monitor 3 miles ahead and 25 degrees left and right of the aircraft's heading at or below 1200' AGL. Departing flights may receive a wind shear alert after they start the takeoff roll and may elect to abort the takeoff. Aircraft on approach receiving an alert may elect to go around or perform a wind shear escape maneuver.

PREFERENTIAL ROUTES– Preferential routes (PDRs, PARs, and PDARs) are adapted in ARTCC computers to accomplish inter/intrafacility controller coordination and to assure that flight data is posted at the proper control positions. Locations having a need for these specific inbound and outbound routes normally publish such routes in local facility bulletins, and their use by pilots minimizes flight plan route amendments. When the workload or traffic situation permits, controllers normally provide radar vectors or assign requested routes to minimize circuitous routing. Preferential routes are usually confined to one ARTCC's area and are referred to by the following names or acronyms:

a. Preferential Departure Route (PDR). A specific departure route from an airport or terminal area to an en route point where there is no further need for flow control. It may be included in an Instrument Departure Procedure (DP) or a Preferred IFR Route.

b. Preferential Arrival Route (PAR). A specific arrival route from an appropriate en route point to an airport or terminal area. It may be included in a Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) or a Preferred IFR Route. The abbreviation "PAR" is used primarily within the ARTCC and should not be confused with the abbreviation for Precision Approach Radar.

c. Preferential Departure and Arrival Route (PDAR). A route between two terminals which are within or immediately adjacent to one ARTCC's area. PDARs are not synonymous with Preferred IFR Routes but may be listed as such as they do accomplish essentially the same purpose.

(See PREFERRED IFR ROUTES.)

PREFERRED IFR ROUTES– Routes established between busier airports to increase system efficiency and capacity. They normally extend through one or

more ARTCC areas and are designed to achieve balanced traffic flows among high density terminals. IFR clearances are issued on the basis of these routes except when severe weather avoidance procedures or other factors dictate otherwise. Preferred IFR Routes are listed in the Airport/Facility Directory. If a flight is planned to or from an area having such routes but the departure or arrival point is not listed in the Airport/Facility Directory, pilots may use that part of a Preferred IFR Route which is appropriate for the departure or arrival point that is listed. Preferred IFR Routes are correlated with DPs and STARs and may be defined by airways, jet routes, direct routes between NAVAIDs, Waypoints, NAVAID radials/DME, or any combinations thereof.

(See CENTER'S AREA.)

(See INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)

(See PREFERENTIAL ROUTES.)

(See STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL.)

(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

(Refer to NOTICES TO AIRMEN PUBLICATION.)

PRE-FLIGHT PILOT BRIEFING–

(See PILOT BRIEFING.)

PREVAILING VISIBILITY–

(See VISIBILITY.)

PRIMARY RADAR TARGET– An analog or digital target, exclusive of a secondary radar target, presented on a radar display.

PRM–

(See ILS PRM APPROACH and PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR.)

PROCEDURE TURN– The maneuver prescribed when it is necessary to reverse direction to establish an aircraft on the intermediate approach segment or final approach course. The outbound course, direction of turn, distance within which the turn must be completed, and minimum altitude are specified in the procedure. However, unless otherwise restricted, the point at which the turn may be commenced and the type and rate of turn are left to the discretion of the pilot.

(See ICAO term PROCEDURE TURN.)

PROCEDURE TURN [ICAO]– A maneuver in which a turn is made away from a designated track followed by a turn in the opposite direction to permit the aircraft to intercept and proceed along the reciprocal of the designated track.

Note 1: Procedure turns are designated "left" or "right" according to the direction of the initial turn.

Note 2: Procedure turns may be designated as being made either in level flight or while descending, according to the circumstances of each individual approach procedure.

PROCEDURE TURN INBOUND– That point of a procedure turn maneuver where course reversal has been completed and an aircraft is established inbound on the intermediate approach segment or final approach course. A report of "procedure turn inbound" is normally used by ATC as a position report for separation purposes.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)

(See PROCEDURE TURN.)

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

PROFILE DESCENT– An uninterrupted descent (except where level flight is required for speed adjustment; e.g., 250 knots at 10,000 feet MSL) from cruising altitude/level to interception of a glideslope or to a minimum altitude specified for the initial or intermediate approach segment of a nonprecision instrument approach. The profile descent normally terminates at the approach gate or where the glideslope or other appropriate minimum altitude is intercepted.

PROGRESS REPORT–

(See POSITION REPORT.)

PROGRESSIVE TAXI– Precise taxi instructions given to a pilot unfamiliar with the airport or issued in stages as the aircraft proceeds along the taxi route.

PROHIBITED AREA–

(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

(See ICAO term PROHIBITED AREA.)

PROHIBITED AREA [ICAO]– An airspace of defined dimensions, above the land areas or territorial waters of a State, within which the flight of aircraft is prohibited.

PROMINENT OBSTACLE– An obstacle that meets one or more of the following conditions:

a. An obstacle which stands out beyond the adjacent surface of surrounding terrain and immediately projects a noticeable hazard to aircraft in flight.

b. An obstacle, not characterized as low and close in, whose height is no less than 300 feet above the

departure end of takeoff runway (DER) elevation, is within 10NM from the DER, and that penetrates that airport/heliport's diverse departure obstacle clearance surface (OCS).

c. An obstacle beyond 10NM from an airport/heliport that requires an obstacle departure procedure (ODP) to ensure obstacle avoidance.

(See OBSTACLE.)
(See OBSTRUCTION.)

PROPOSED BOUNDARY CROSSING TIME– Each center has a PBCT parameter for each internal airport. Proposed internal flight plans are transmitted to the adjacent center if the flight time along the proposed route from the departure airport to the center boundary is less than or equal to the value of PBCT or if airport adaptation specifies transmission regardless of PBCT.

PROPOSED DEPARTURE TIME– The time that the aircraft expects to become airborne.

PROTECTED AIRSPACE– The airspace on either side of an oceanic route/track that is equal to one-half the lateral separation minimum except where reduction of protected airspace has been authorized.

PROTECTED SEGMENT- The protected segment is a segment on the amended TFM route that is to be inhibited from automatic adapted route alteration by ERAM.

PT–

(See PROCEDURE TURN.)

PTP–

(See POINT–TO–POINT.)

PTS–

(See POLAR TRACK STRUCTURE.)

PUBLISHED INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE VISUAL SEGMENT– A segment on an IAP chart annotated as "Fly Visual to Airport" or "Fly Visual." A dashed arrow will indicate the visual flight path on the profile and plan view with an associated note on the approximate heading and distance. The visual segment should be flown as a dead reckoning course while maintaining visual conditions.

PUBLISHED ROUTE– A route for which an IFR altitude has been established and published; e.g., Federal Airways, Jet Routes, Area Navigation Routes, Specified Direct Routes.

PWS–

(See PREDICTIVE WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM.)

S

SAA–
(See SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE.)

SAFETY ALERT– A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft. The controller may discontinue the issuance of further alerts if the pilot advises he/she is taking action to correct the situation or has the other aircraft in sight.

a. Terrain/Obstruction Alert– A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain/obstructions; e.g., "Low Altitude Alert, check your altitude immediately."

b. Aircraft Conflict Alert– A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware of an aircraft that is not under their control at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places both aircraft in unsafe proximity to each other. With the alert, ATC will offer the pilot an alternate course of action when feasible; e.g., "Traffic Alert, advise you turn right heading zero niner zero or climb to eight thousand immediately."

Note: The issuance of a safety alert is contingent upon the capability of the controller to have an awareness of an unsafe condition. The course of action provided will be predicated on other traffic under ATC control. Once the alert is issued, it is solely the pilot's prerogative to determine what course of action, if any, he/she will take.

SAFETY LOGIC SYSTEM– A software enhancement to ASDE–3, ASDE–X, and ASDE–3X, that predicts the path of aircraft landing and/or departing, and/or vehicular movements on runways. Visual and aural alarms are activated when the safety logic projects a potential collision. The Airport Movement Area Safety System (AMASS) is a safety logic system enhancement to the ASDE–3. The Safety Logic System for ASDE–X and ASDE–3X is an integral part of the software program.

SAFETY LOGIC SYSTEM ALERTS–

a. ALERT– An actual situation involving two real safety logic tracks (aircraft/aircraft, aircraft/vehicle, or aircraft/other tangible object) that safety logic has predicted will result in an imminent collision, based upon the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

b. FALSE ALERT–

1. Alerts generated by one or more false surface–radar targets that the system has interpreted as real tracks and placed into safety logic.

2. Alerts in which the safety logic software did not perform correctly, based upon the design specifications and the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

3. The alert is generated by surface radar targets caused by moderate or greater precipitation.

c. NUISANCE ALERT– An alert in which one or more of the following is true:

1. The alert is generated by a known situation that is not considered an unsafe operation, such as LAHSO or other approved operations.

2. The alert is generated by inaccurate secondary radar data received by the Safety Logic System.

3. One or more of the aircraft involved in the alert is not intending to use a runway (for example, helicopter, pipeline patrol, non–Mode C overflight, etc.).

d. VALID NON–ALERT– A situation in which the safety logic software correctly determines that an alert is not required, based upon the design specifications and the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

e. INVALID NON–ALERT– A situation in which the safety logic software did not issue an alert when an alert was required, based upon the design specifications.

SAIL BACK– A maneuver during high wind conditions (usually with power off) where float plane movement is controlled by water rudders/opening and closing cabin doors.

SAME DIRECTION AIRCRAFT– Aircraft are operating in the same direction when:

a. They are following the same track in the same direction; or

b. Their tracks are parallel and the aircraft are flying in the same direction; or

c. Their tracks intersect at an angle of less than 45 degrees.

SAR–
(See SEARCH AND RESCUE.)

SAY AGAIN– Used to request a repeat of the last transmission. Usually specifies transmission or portion thereof not understood or received; e.g., "Say again all after ABRAM VOR."

SAY ALTITUDE– Used by ATC to ascertain an aircraft's specific altitude/flight level. When the aircraft is climbing or descending, the pilot should state the indicated altitude rounded to the nearest 100 feet.

SAY HEADING– Used by ATC to request an aircraft heading. The pilot should state the actual heading of the aircraft.

SCHEDULED TIME OF ARRIVAL (STA)– A STA is the desired time that an aircraft should cross a certain point (landing or metering fix). It takes other traffic and airspace configuration into account. A STA time shows the results of the TMA scheduler that has calculated an arrival time according to parameters such as optimized spacing, aircraft performance, and weather.

SDF–
(See SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITY.)

SEA LANE– A designated portion of water outlined by visual surface markers for and intended to be used by aircraft designed to operate on water.

SEARCH AND RESCUE– A service which seeks missing aircraft and assists those found to be in need of assistance. It is a cooperative effort using the facilities and services of available Federal, state and local agencies. The U.S. Coast Guard is responsible for coordination of search and rescue for the Maritime Region, and the U.S. Air Force is responsible for search and rescue for the Inland Region. Information pertinent to search and rescue should be passed through any air traffic facility or be transmitted directly to the Rescue Coordination Center by telephone.
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)
(See RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SEARCH AND RESCUE FACILITY– A facility responsible for maintaining and operating a search and rescue (SAR) service to render aid to persons and property in distress. It is any SAR unit, station, NET, or other operational activity which can be usefully employed during an SAR Mission; e.g., a Civil Air Patrol Wing, or a Coast Guard Station.
(See SEARCH AND RESCUE.)

SECNOT–
(See SECURITY NOTICE.)

SECONDARY RADAR TARGET– A target derived from a transponder return presented on a radar display.

SECTIONAL AERONAUTICAL CHARTS–
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

SECTOR LIST DROP INTERVAL– A parameter number of minutes after the meter fix time when arrival aircraft will be deleted from the arrival sector list.

SECURITY NOTICE (SECNOT) – A SECNOT is a request originated by the Air Traffic Security Coordinator (ATSC) for an extensive communications search for aircraft involved, or suspected of being involved, in a security violation, or are considered a security risk. A SECNOT will include the aircraft identification, search area, and expiration time. The search area, as defined by the ATSC, could be a single airport, multiple airports, a radius of an airport or fix, or a route of flight. Once the expiration time has been reached, the SECNOT is considered to be cancelled.

SECURITY SERVICES AIRSPACE – Areas established through the regulatory process or by NOTAM, issued by the Administrator under title 14, CFR, sections 99.7, 91.141, and 91.139, which specify that ATC security services are required; i.e., ADIZ or temporary flight rules areas.

SEE AND AVOID– When weather conditions permit, pilots operating IFR or VFR are required to observe and maneuver to avoid other aircraft. Right-of-way rules are contained in 14 CFR Part 91.

SEGMENTED CIRCLE– A system of visual indicators designed to provide traffic pattern information at airports without operating control towers.
(Refer to AIM.)

SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE– An instrument approach procedure may have as many as four separate segments depending on how the approach procedure is structured.

a. Initial Approach– The segment between the initial approach fix and the intermediate fix or the

point where the aircraft is established on the intermediate course or final approach course.

(See ICAO term INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT.)

b. Intermediate Approach– The segment between the intermediate fix or point and the final approach fix.

(See ICAO term INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT.)

c. Final Approach– The segment between the final approach fix or point and the runway, airport, or missed approach point.

(See ICAO term FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT.)

d. Missed Approach– The segment between the missed approach point or the point of arrival at decision height and the missed approach fix at the prescribed altitude.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 97.)

(See ICAO term MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SEPARATION– In air traffic control, the spacing of aircraft to achieve their safe and orderly movement in flight and while landing and taking off.

(See SEPARATION MINIMA.)

(See ICAO term SEPARATION.)

SEPARATION [ICAO]– Spacing between aircraft, levels or tracks.

SEPARATION MINIMA– The minimum longitudinal, lateral, or vertical distances by which aircraft are spaced through the application of air traffic control procedures.

(See SEPARATION.)

SERVICE– A generic term that designates functions or assistance available from or rendered by air traffic control. For example, Class C service would denote the ATC services provided within a Class C airspace area.

SEVERE WEATHER AVOIDANCE PLAN– An approved plan to minimize the affect of severe weather on traffic flows in impacted terminal and/or ARTCC areas. SWAP is normally implemented to provide the least disruption to the ATC system when flight through portions of airspace is difficult or impossible due to severe weather.

SEVERE WEATHER FORECAST ALERTS– Preliminary messages issued in order to alert users that a Severe Weather Watch Bulletin (WW) is being issued. These messages define areas of possible severe thunderstorms or tornado activity. The messages are unscheduled and issued as required by the Storm Prediction Center (SPC) at Norman, Oklahoma.

(See AIRMET.)

(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

(See CWA.)

(See SIGMET.)

SFA–

(See SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH.)

SFO–

(See SIMULATED FLAMEOUT.)

SHF–

(See SUPER HIGH FREQUENCY.)

SHORT RANGE CLEARANCE– A clearance issued to a departing IFR flight which authorizes IFR flight to a specific fix short of the destination while air traffic control facilities are coordinating and obtaining the complete clearance.

SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT– An aircraft which, at some weight within its approved operating weight, is capable of operating from a runway in compliance with the applicable STOL characteristics, airworthiness, operations, noise, and pollution standards.

(See VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

SIAP–

(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SID–

(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE.)

SIDESTEP MANEUVER– A visual maneuver accomplished by a pilot at the completion of an instrument approach to permit a straight-in landing on a parallel runway not more than 1,200 feet to either side of the runway to which the instrument approach was conducted.

(Refer to AIM.)

SIGMET– A weather advisory issued concerning weather significant to the safety of all aircraft.

SIGMET advisories cover severe and extreme turbulence, severe icing, and widespread dust or sandstorms that reduce visibility to less than 3 miles.
(See AIRMET.)
(See AWW.)
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See CWA.)
(See ICAO term SIGMET INFORMATION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SIGMET INFORMATION [ICAO]– Information issued by a meteorological watch office concerning the occurrence or expected occurrence of specified en-route weather phenomena which may affect the safety of aircraft operations.

SIGNIFICANT METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION–
(See SIGMET.)

SIGNIFICANT POINT– A point, whether a named intersection, a NAVAID, a fix derived from a NAVAID(s), or geographical coordinate expressed in degrees of latitude and longitude, which is established for the purpose of providing separation, as a reporting point, or to delineate a route of flight.

SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITY– A NAVAID used for nonprecision instrument approaches. The final approach course is similar to that of an ILS localizer except that the SDF course may be offset from the runway, generally not more than 3 degrees, and the course may be wider than the localizer, resulting in a lower degree of accuracy.
(Refer to AIM.)

SIMULATED FLAMEOUT– A practice approach by a jet aircraft (normally military) at idle thrust to a runway. The approach may start at a runway (high key) and may continue on a relatively high and wide downwind leg with a continuous turn to final. It terminates in landing or low approach. The purpose of this approach is to simulate a flameout.
(See FLAMEOUT.)

SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES– An approach system permitting simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches to airports having parallel runways separated by at least 4,300 feet between centerlines. Integral parts of a total system are ILS/MLS, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and appropriate airborne equipment.
(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SIMULTANEOUS MLS APPROACHES–
(See SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES.)

SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACH (SOIA) – An instrument landing system comprised of an ILS PRM or RNAV (GPS) PRM approach to one runway and an offset LDA PRM with glideslope or an RNAV (GPS) PRM approach utilizing vertical guidance to another where parallel runway spaced less than 3,000 feet and at least 750 feet apart. The approach courses converge by 2.5 to 3 degrees. Closely spaced independent approach procedures apply up to the point where the approach course separation becomes 3,000 feet, at the offset MAP. From the offset MAP to the runway threshold, visual separation by the aircraft conducting the offset LDA PRM or GPS PRM approach is utilized.
(Refer to AIM)

SINGLE DIRECTION ROUTES– Preferred IFR Routes which are sometimes depicted on high altitude en route charts and which are normally flown in one direction only.
(See PREFERRED IFR ROUTES.)
(Refer to AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)

SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH– A service provided under a letter of agreement to military single-piloted turbojet aircraft which permits use of a single UHF frequency during approach for landing. Pilots will not normally be required to change frequency from the beginning of the approach to touchdown except that pilots conducting an en route descent are required to change frequency when control is transferred from the air route traffic control center to the terminal facility. The abbreviation “SFA” in the DOD FLIP IFR Supplement under “Communications” indicates this service is available at an aerodrome.

SINGLE-PILOTED AIRCRAFT– A military turbojet aircraft possessing one set of flight controls, tandem cockpits, or two sets of flight controls but operated by one pilot is considered single-piloted by ATC when determining the appropriate air traffic service to be applied.
(See SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH.)

SKYSPOTTER– A pilot who has received specialized training in observing and reporting inflight weather phenomena.

SLASH– A radar beacon reply displayed as an elongated target.

SLDI–
(See SECTOR LIST DROP INTERVAL.)

SLOT TIME–
(See METER FIX TIME/SLOT TIME.)

SLOW TAXI– To taxi a float plane at low power or low RPM.

SN–
(See SYSTEM STRATEGIC NAVIGATION.)

SPEAK SLOWER– Used in verbal communications as a request to reduce speech rate.

SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE (SAA)– Any airspace with defined dimensions within the National Airspace System wherein limitations may be imposed upon aircraft operations. This airspace may be restricted areas, prohibited areas, military operations areas, air ATC assigned airspace, and any other designated airspace areas. The dimensions of this airspace are programmed into URET and can be designated as either active or inactive by screen entry. Aircraft trajectories are constantly tested against the dimensions of active areas and alerts issued to the applicable sectors when violations are predicted.
(See USER REQUEST EVALUATION TOOL.)

SPECIAL EMERGENCY– A condition of air piracy or other hostile act by a person(s) aboard an aircraft which threatens the safety of the aircraft or its passengers.

SPECIAL INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE–
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE– Airspace of defined dimensions identified by an area on the surface of the earth wherein activities must be confined because of their nature and/or wherein limitations may be imposed upon aircraft operations that are not a part of those activities. Types of special use airspace are:

a. Alert Area– Airspace which may contain a high volume of pilot training activities or an unusual type of aerial activity, neither of which is hazardous to aircraft. Alert Areas are depicted on aeronautical charts for the information of nonparticipating pilots. All activities within an Alert Area are conducted in accordance with Federal Aviation Regulations, and pilots of participating aircraft as well as pilots transiting the area are equally responsible for collision avoidance.

b. Controlled Firing Area– Airspace wherein activities are conducted under conditions so controlled as to eliminate hazards to nonparticipating aircraft and to ensure the safety of persons and property on the ground.

c. Military Operations Area (MOA)– A MOA is airspace established outside of Class A airspace area to separate or segregate certain nonhazardous military activities from IFR traffic and to identify for VFR traffic where these activities are conducted.
(Refer to AIM.)

d. Prohibited Area– Airspace designated under 14 CFR Part 73 within which no person may operate an aircraft without the permission of the using agency.
(Refer to AIM.)
(Refer to En Route Charts.)

e. Restricted Area– Airspace designated under 14 CFR Part 73, within which the flight of aircraft, while not wholly prohibited, is subject to restriction. Most restricted areas are designated joint use and IFR/VFR operations in the area may be authorized by the controlling ATC facility when it is not being utilized by the using agency. Restricted areas are depicted on en route charts. Where joint use is authorized, the name of the ATC controlling facility is also shown.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 73.)
(Refer to AIM.)

f. Warning Area– A warning area is airspace of defined dimensions extending from 3 nautical miles outward from the coast of the United States, that contains activity that may be hazardous to nonparticipating aircraft. The purpose of such warning area is to warn nonparticipating pilots of the potential danger. A warning area may be located over domestic or international waters or both.

SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS– Meteorological conditions that are less than those required for basic VFR flight in Class B, C, D, or E surface areas and in which some aircraft are permitted flight under visual flight rules.
(See SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

SPECIAL VFR FLIGHT [ICAO]– A VFR flight cleared by air traffic control to operate within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas in metrological conditions below VMC.

SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS– Aircraft operating in accordance with clearances within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas in weather conditions less than the basic VFR weather minima. Such operations must be requested by the pilot and approved by ATC.

(See SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS.)

(See ICAO term SPECIAL VFR FLIGHT.)

SPEED–

(See AIRSPEED.)

(See GROUND SPEED.)

SPEED ADJUSTMENT– An ATC procedure used to request pilots to adjust aircraft speed to a specific value for the purpose of providing desired spacing. Pilots are expected to maintain a speed of plus or minus 10 knots or 0.02 Mach number of the specified speed. Examples of speed adjustments are:

a. "Increase/reduce speed to Mach point (number.)"

b. "Increase/reduce speed to (speed in knots)" or "Increase/reduce speed (number of knots) knots."

SPEED BRAKES– Moveable aerodynamic devices on aircraft that reduce airspeed during descent and landing.

SPEED SEGMENTS– Portions of the arrival route between the transition point and the vertex along the optimum flight path for which speeds and altitudes are specified. There is one set of arrival speed segments adapted from each transition point to each vertex. Each set may contain up to six segments.

SQUAWK (Mode, Code, Function)– Activate specific modes/codes/functions on the aircraft transponder; e.g., "Squawk three/alpha, two one zero five, low."

(See TRANSPONDER.)

STA–

(See SCHEDULED TIME OF ARRIVAL.)

STAGING/QUEUING– The placement, integration, and segregation of departure aircraft in designated movement areas of an airport by departure fix, EDCT, and/or restriction.

STAND BY– Means the controller or pilot must pause for a few seconds, usually to attend to other duties of a higher priority. Also means to wait as in "stand by for clearance." The caller should reestablish contact if a delay is lengthy. "Stand by" is not an approval or denial.

STANDARD INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE (SIAP)–

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE (SID)– A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) air traffic control (ATC) departure procedure printed for pilot/controller use in graphic form to provide obstacle clearance and a transition from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. SIDs are primarily designed for system enhancement to expedite traffic flow and to reduce pilot/controller workload. ATC clearance must always be received prior to flying a SID.

(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)

(See OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)

(Refer to AIM.)

STANDARD RATE TURN– A turn of three degrees per second.

STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL– A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) air traffic control arrival procedure published for pilot use in graphic and/or textual form. STARs provide transition from the en route structure to an outer fix or an instrument approach fix/arrival waypoint in the terminal area.

STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL CHARTS–

(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

STANDARD TERMINAL AUTOMATION REPLACEMENT SYSTEM (STARS)–

(See DTAS.)

STAR–

(See STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL.)

STATE AIRCRAFT– Aircraft used in military, customs and police service, in the exclusive service of any government, or of any political subdivision, thereof including the government of any state, territory, or possession of the United States or the District of Columbia, but not including any government-owned aircraft engaged in carrying persons or property for commercial purposes.

STATIC RESTRICTIONS– Those restrictions that are usually not subject to change, fixed, in place, and/or published.

STATIONARY RESERVATIONS– Altitude reservations which encompass activities in a fixed area. Stationary reservations may include activities,

such as special tests of weapons systems or equipment, certain U.S. Navy carrier, fleet, and anti-submarine operations, rocket, missile and drone operations, and certain aerial refueling or similar operations.

STEP TAXI– To taxi a float plane at full power or high RPM.

STEP TURN– A maneuver used to put a float plane in a planing configuration prior to entering an active sea lane for takeoff. The STEP TURN maneuver should only be used upon pilot request.

STEPDOWN FIX– A fix permitting additional descent within a segment of an instrument approach procedure by identifying a point at which a controlling obstacle has been safely overflown.

STEREO ROUTE– A routinely used route of flight established by users and ARTCCs identified by a coded name; e.g., ALPHA 2. These routes minimize flight plan handling and communications.

STOL AIRCRAFT–
(See SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK– Used by ATC to inform an aircraft to turn-off the automatic altitude reporting feature of its transponder. It is issued when the verbally reported altitude varies 300 feet or more from the automatic altitude report.
(See ALTITUDE READOUT.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)

STOP AND GO– A procedure wherein an aircraft will land, make a complete stop on the runway, and then commence a takeoff from that point.
(See LOW APPROACH.)
(See OPTION APPROACH.)

STOP BURST–
(See STOP STREAM.)

STOP BUZZER–
(See STOP STREAM.)

STOP SQUAWK (Mode or Code)– Used by ATC to tell the pilot to turn specified functions of the aircraft transponder off.
(See STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)

STOP STREAM– Used by ATC to request a pilot to suspend electronic attack activity.
(See JAMMING.)

STOPOVER FLIGHT PLAN– A flight plan format which permits in a single submission the filing of a sequence of flight plans through interim full-stop destinations to a final destination.

STOPWAY– An area beyond the takeoff runway no less wide than the runway and centered upon the extended centerline of the runway, able to support the airplane during an aborted takeoff, without causing structural damage to the airplane, and designated by the airport authorities for use in decelerating the airplane during an aborted takeoff.

STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH IFR– An instrument approach wherein final approach is begun without first having executed a procedure turn, not necessarily completed with a straight-in landing or made to straight-in landing minimums.
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING.)

STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR– Entry into the traffic pattern by interception of the extended runway centerline (final approach course) without executing any other portion of the traffic pattern.
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

STRAIGHT-IN LANDING– A landing made on a runway aligned within 30° of the final approach course following completion of an instrument approach.
(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH IFR.)

STRAIGHT-IN LANDING MINIMUMS–
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

STRAIGHT-IN MINIMUMS–
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING MINIMUMS.)

STRATEGIC PLANNING– Planning whereby solutions are sought to resolve potential conflicts.

SUBSTITUTE ROUTE– A route assigned to pilots when any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status. These routes consist of:

a. Substitute routes which are shown on U.S. Government charts.

b. Routes defined by ATC as specific NAVAID radials or courses.

c. Routes defined by ATC as direct to or between NAVAIDs.

SUNSET AND SUNRISE– The mean solar times of sunset and sunrise as published in the Nautical Almanac, converted to local standard time for the locality concerned. Within Alaska, the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight, as defined for each locality.

SUPER HIGH FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 3 and 30 gigahertz (GHz). The elevation and azimuth stations of the microwave landing system operate from 5031 MHz to 5091 MHz in this spectrum.

SUPPLEMENTAL WEATHER SERVICE LOCATION– Airport facilities staffed with contract personnel who take weather observations and provide current local weather to pilots via telephone or radio. (All other services are provided by the parent FSS.)

SUPPS– Refers to ICAO Document 7030 Regional Supplementary Procedures. SUPPS contain procedures for each ICAO Region which are unique to that Region and are not covered in the worldwide provisions identified in the ICAO Air Navigation Plan. Procedures contained in Chapter 8 are based in part on those published in SUPPS.

SURFACE AREA– The airspace contained by the lateral boundary of the Class B, C, D, or E airspace designated for an airport that begins at the surface and extends upward.

SURPIC– A description of surface vessels in the area of a Search and Rescue incident including their predicted positions and their characteristics.

(Refer to FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 10–6–4, INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES.)

SURVEILLANCE APPROACH– An instrument approach wherein the air traffic controller issues instructions, for pilot compliance, based on aircraft position in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), and the distance (range) from the end of the runway as displayed on the controller's radar scope. The controller will provide recommended altitudes on final approach if requested by the pilot.

(Refer to AIM.)

SWAP–

(See SEVERE WEATHER AVOIDANCE PLAN.)

SWSL–

(See SUPPLEMENTAL WEATHER SERVICE LOCATION.)

SYSTEM STRATEGIC NAVIGATION– Military activity accomplished by navigating along a preplanned route using internal aircraft systems to maintain a desired track. This activity normally requires a lateral route width of 10 NM and altitude range of 1,000 feet to 6,000 feet AGL with some route segments that permit terrain following.

U

UHF–
(See ULTRAHIGH FREQUENCY.)

ULTRAHIGH FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 300 and 3,000 MHz. The bank of radio frequencies used for military air/ground voice communications. In some instances this may go as low as 225 MHz and still be referred to as UHF.

ULTRALIGHT VEHICLE– An aeronautical vehicle operated for sport or recreational purposes which does not require FAA registration, an airworthiness certificate, nor pilot certification. They are primarily single occupant vehicles, although some two-place vehicles are authorized for training purposes. Operation of an ultralight vehicle in certain airspace requires authorization from ATC.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 103.)

UNABLE– Indicates inability to comply with a specific instruction, request, or clearance.

UNASSOCIATED– A radar target that does not display a data block with flight identification and altitude information.
(See ASSOCIATED.)

UNDER THE HOOD– Indicates that the pilot is using a hood to restrict visibility outside the cockpit while simulating instrument flight. An appropriately rated pilot is required in the other control seat while this operation is being conducted.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

UNFROZEN– The Scheduled Time of Arrival (STA) tags, which are still being rescheduled by traffic management advisor (TMA) calculations. The aircraft will remain unfrozen until the time the corresponding estimated time of arrival (ETA) tag passes the preset freeze horizon for that aircraft's stream class. At this point the automatic rescheduling will stop, and the STA becomes "frozen."

UNICOM– A nongovernment communication facility which may provide airport information at certain airports. Locations and frequencies of UNICOMs are shown on aeronautical charts and publications.
(See AIRPORT/FACILITY DIRECTORY.)
(Refer to AIM.)

UNPUBLISHED ROUTE– A route for which no minimum altitude is published or charted for pilot use. It may include a direct route between NAVAIDs, a radial, a radar vector, or a final approach course beyond the segments of an instrument approach procedure.
(See PUBLISHED ROUTE.)
(See ROUTE.)

UNRELIABLE (GPS/WAAS)– An advisory to pilots indicating the expected level of service of the GPS and/or WAAS may not be available. Pilots must then determine the adequacy of the signal for desired use.

UPWIND LEG–
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

URET–
(See USER REQUEST EVALUATION TOOL.)

URGENCY– A condition of being concerned about safety and of requiring timely but not immediate assistance; a potential distress condition.
(See ICAO term URGENCY.)

URGENCY [ICAO]– A condition concerning the safety of an aircraft or other vehicle, or of person on board or in sight, but which does not require immediate assistance.

USAFIB–
(See ARMY AVIATION FLIGHT INFORMATION BULLETIN.)

USER REQUEST EVALUATION TOOL (URET)– User Request Evaluation Tool is an automated tool provided at each Radar Associate position in selected En Route facilities. This tool utilizes flight and radar data to determine present and future trajectories for all active and proposal aircraft and provides enhanced, automated flight data management.

V

VASI–
(See VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATOR.)

VCOA–
(See VISUAL CLIMB OVER AIRPORT.)

VDP–
(See VISUAL DESCENT POINT.)

VECTOR– A heading issued to an aircraft to provide navigational guidance by radar.
(See ICAO term RADAR VECTORING.)

VERIFY– Request confirmation of information; e.g., "verify assigned altitude."

VERIFY SPECIFIC DIRECTION OF TAKEOFF (OR TURNS AFTER TAKEOFF)– Used by ATC to ascertain an aircraft's direction of takeoff and/or direction of turn after takeoff. It is normally used for IFR departures from an airport not having a control tower. When direct communication with the pilot is not possible, the request and information may be relayed through an FSS, dispatcher, or by other means.
(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)

VERTEX– The last fix adapted on the arrival speed segments. Normally, it will be the outer marker of the runway in use. However, it may be the actual threshold or other suitable common point on the approach path for the particular runway configuration.

VERTEX TIME OF ARRIVAL– A calculated time of aircraft arrival over the adapted vertex for the runway configuration in use. The time is calculated via the optimum flight path using adapted speed segments.

VERTICAL NAVIGATION (VNAV)– A function of area navigation (RNAV) equipment which calculates, displays, and provides vertical guidance to a profile or path.

VERTICAL SEPARATION– Separation between aircraft expressed in units of vertical distance.
(See SEPARATION.)

VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT– Aircraft capable of vertical climbs and/or descents and of using very short runways or small areas for takeoff and landings. These aircraft include, but are not limited to, helicopters.
(See SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

VERY HIGH FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 30 and 300 MHz. Portions of this band, 108 to 118 MHz, are used for certain NAVAIDs; 118 to 136 MHz are used for civil air/ground voice communications. Other frequencies in this band are used for purposes not related to air traffic control.

VERY HIGH FREQUENCY OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE STATION–
(See VOR.)

VERY LOW FREQUENCY– The frequency band between 3 and 30 kHz.

VFR–
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VFR AIRCRAFT– An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with visual flight rules.
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VFR CONDITIONS– Weather conditions equal to or better than the minimum for flight under visual flight rules. The term may be used as an ATC clearance/instruction only when:

a. An IFR aircraft requests a climb/descent in VFR conditions.

b. The clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not conform to an FAA approved noise abatement route or altitude.

c. A pilot has requested a practice instrument approach and is not on an IFR flight plan.

Note: All pilots receiving this authorization must comply with the VFR visibility and distance from cloud criteria in 14 CFR Part 91. Use of the term does not relieve controllers of their responsibility to separate aircraft in Class B and Class C airspace or TRSAs as required by FAAO JO 7110.65. When used as an ATC clearance/instruction, the term may be abbreviated "VFR;" e.g., "MAINTAIN VFR," "CLIMB/DESCEND VFR," etc.

VFR FLIGHT–
(See VFR AIRCRAFT.)

VFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES– Routes used by the Department of Defense and associated Reserve and Air Guard units for the purpose of conducting low-altitude navigation and tactical training under VFR below 10,000 feet MSL at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.

VFR NOT RECOMMENDED– An advisory provided by a flight service station to a pilot during a preflight or inflight weather briefing that flight under visual flight rules is not recommended. To be given when the current and/or forecast weather conditions are at or below VFR minimums. It does not abrogate the pilot's authority to make his/her own decision.

VFR-ON-TOP– ATC authorization for an IFR aircraft to operate in VFR conditions at any appropriate VFR altitude (as specified in 14 CFR and as restricted by ATC). A pilot receiving this authorization must comply with the VFR visibility, distance from cloud criteria, and the minimum IFR altitudes specified in 14 CFR Part 91. The use of this term does not relieve controllers of their responsibility to separate aircraft in Class B and Class C airspace or TRSAs as required by FAAO JO 7110.65.

VFR TERMINAL AREA CHARTS–
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

VFR WAYPOINT–
(See WAYPOINT.)

VHF–
(See VERY HIGH FREQUENCY.)

VHF OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE/TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION–
(See VORTAC.)

VIDEO MAP– An electronically displayed map on the radar display that may depict data such as airports, heliports, runway centerline extensions, hospital emergency landing areas, NAVAIDs and fixes, reporting points, airway/route centerlines, boundaries, handoff points, special use tracks, obstructions, prominent geographic features, map alignment indicators, range accuracy marks, minimum vectoring altitudes.

VISIBILITY– The ability, as determined by atmospheric conditions and expressed in units of distance, to see and identify prominent unlighted objects by day and prominent lighted objects by night. Visibility is reported as statute miles, hundreds of feet or meters.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

(Refer to AIM.)

a. Flight Visibility– The average forward horizontal distance, from the cockpit of an aircraft in flight, at which prominent unlighted objects may be seen and identified by day and prominent lighted objects may be seen and identified by night.

b. Ground Visibility– Prevailing horizontal visibility near the earth's surface as reported by the United States National Weather Service or an accredited observer.

c. Prevailing Visibility– The greatest horizontal visibility equaled or exceeded throughout at least half the horizon circle which need not necessarily be continuous.

d. Runway Visibility Value (RVV)– The visibility determined for a particular runway by a transmissometer. A meter provides a continuous indication of the visibility (reported in miles or fractions of miles) for the runway. RVV is used in lieu of prevailing visibility in determining minimums for a particular runway.

e. Runway Visual Range (RVR)– An instrumentally derived value, based on standard calibrations, that represents the horizontal distance a pilot will see down the runway from the approach end. It is based on the sighting of either high intensity runway lights or on the visual contrast of other targets whichever yields the greater visual range. RVR, in contrast to prevailing or runway visibility, is based on what a pilot in a moving aircraft should see looking down the runway. RVR is horizontal visual range, not slant visual range. It is based on the measurement of a transmissometer made near the touchdown point of the instrument runway and is reported in hundreds of feet. RVR is used in lieu of RVV and/or prevailing visibility in determining minimums for a particular runway.

1. Touchdown RVR– The RVR visibility readout values obtained from RVR equipment serving the runway touchdown zone.

2. Mid-RVR– The RVR readout values obtained from RVR equipment located midfield of the runway.

INDEX

[References are to page numbers]

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

BRIEFING GUIDE

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

Initiated By: AJV–0
Vice President, Mission Support Services

Table of Contents

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
2-1-4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY
2-1-28. RVSM OPERATIONS
2-3-5. AIRCRAFT IDENTITY
2-4-20. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION

2. BACKGROUND: ICAO 2012 changes the way aircraft are required to file. This will require the use of the term MEDEVAC for civilian air ambulance flights in the Special Handling Section of the ICAO flight plan. To maintain consistency between ICAO and HOST flight plan filing, all civilian air ambulance flights will be required to file as a MEDEVAC instead of the previous term Lifeguard. The previous meaning of the term MEDEVAC has been removed. The term HOSP was added.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2–1–4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY	**2–1–4. OPERATIONAL PRIORITY**
title thru **a**	No Change
b. Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights "LIFEGUARD." Air carrier/taxi usage of the "LIFEGUARD" call sign, indicates that operational priority is requested. When verbally requested, provide priority to military air evacuation flights (AIR EVAC, MED EVAC) and scheduled air carrier/air taxi flights. Assist the pilots of air ambulance/evacuation aircraft to avoid areas of significant weather and turbulent conditions. When requested by a pilot, provide notifications to expedite ground handling of patients, vital organs, or urgently needed medical materials.	**b.** Provide priority to civilian air ambulance flights **(call sign "MEDEVAC")**. **Use** of the **MEDEVAC** call sign indicates that operational priority is requested. When verbally requested, provide priority to **AIR EVAC, HOSP,** and scheduled air carrier/air taxi flights. Assist the pilots of **MEDEVAC, AIR EVAC, and HOSP** aircraft to avoid areas of significant weather and turbulent conditions. When requested by a pilot, provide notifications to expedite ground handling of patients, vital organs, or urgently needed medical materials.
NOTE- *It is recognized that heavy traffic flow may affect the controller's ability to provide priority handling. However, without compromising safety, good judgment must be used in each situation to facilitate the most expeditious movement of a lifeguard aircraft*	***NOTE-*** *It is recognized that heavy traffic flow may affect the controller's ability to provide priority handling. However, without compromising safety, good judgment must be used in each situation to facilitate the most expeditious movement of a **MEDEVAC** aircraft.*
c thru **m**	No Change
NOTE– *An OPEN SKIES aircraft has priority over all "regular" air traffic. "Regular" is defined as all aircraft traffic other than:* ***1.** Emergencies.* ***2.** Aircraft directly involved in presidential movement.* ***3.** Forces or activities in actual combat.* ***4.** Lifeguard, MED EVAC, AIR EVAC and active SAR missions.*	***NOTE–*** *An OPEN SKIES aircraft has priority over all "regular" air traffic. "Regular" is defined as all aircraft traffic other than:* *1. Emergencies.* *2. Aircraft directly involved in presidential movement.* *3. Forces or activities in actual combat.* *4. **MEDEVAC,** and active SAR missions.*
Add	***5. AIR EVAC and HOSP aircraft that have requested priority handling.***

OLD	NEW
2-1-28. RVSM OPERATIONS	**2-1-28. RVSM OPERATIONS**

title thru **a**

1. Ensure non-RVSM aircraft are not permitted in RVSM airspace unless they meet the criteria of excepted aircraft and are previously approved by the operations supervisor/CIC. The following aircraft are excepted: DOD, DOD certified aircraft operated by NASA (T38, F15, F18, WB57, S3, and U2 aircraft only), Lifeguard, manufacturer aircraft being flown for development/certification, and Foreign State aircraft. These exceptions are accommodated on a workload or traffic-permitting basis.

OLD

2-3-5. AIRCRAFT IDENTITY

Indicate aircraft identity by one of the following using combinations not to exceed seven alphanumeric characters:

a. Civil aircraft, including air-carrier aircraft letter-digit registration number including the letter "T" prefix for air taxi aircraft, the letter "L" for lifeguard aircraft, 3-letter aircraft company designator specified in FAAO JO 7340.2, Contractions, followed by the trip or flight number. Use the operating air carrier's company name in identifying equipment interchange flights.

EXAMPLE–

NOTE–
The letter "L" is not to be used for air carrier/air taxi lifeguard aircraft.

OLD

2-4-20. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION

title thru **a3**

4. Air carrier/taxi ambulance. State the prefix, "Lifeguard", if used by the pilot, followed by the call sign and flight number in group form.

EXAMPLE–
"Lifeguard Delta Fifty-One."

5. Civilian air ambulance. State the word "LIFEGUARD" followed by the numbers/letters of the registration number.

EXAMPLE–
"Lifeguard Two Six Four Six."

No Change

1. Ensure non-RVSM aircraft are not permitted in RVSM airspace unless they meet the criteria of excepted aircraft and are previously approved by the operations supervisor/CIC. The following aircraft are excepted: DOD, DOD-certified aircraft operated by NASA (T38, F15, F18, WB57, S3, and U2 aircraft only), **MEDEVAC**, manufacturer aircraft being flown for development/certification, and Foreign State aircraft. These exceptions are accommodated on a workload or traffic-permitting basis.

NEW

2-3-5. AIRCRAFT IDENTITY

Indicate aircraft identity by one of the following using combinations not to exceed seven alphanumeric characters:

a. Civil aircraft, including **the** air-carrier letter-digit registration number **which can include** the letter "T" for air taxi, the letter "L" for **MEDEVAC**, **or the** 3-letter company designator specified in FAA **Order** JO 7340.2, Contractions, followed by the trip or flight number. Use the operating air carrier's company name in identifying equipment interchange flights.

No Change

NOTE–
*The letter "L" is not to be used for air carrier/air taxi **MEDEVAC** aircraft.*

NEW

2-4-20. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION

No Change

4. Air carrier/taxi ambulance. State the prefix **"MEDEVAC"** if used by the pilot, followed by the call sign and flight number in group form.

EXAMPLE–
*"**MEDEVAC** Delta Fifty-One."*

5. Civilian air ambulance. State the word "**MEDEVAC**" followed by the numbers/letters of the registration number.

EXAMPLE–
*"**MEDEVAC** Two Six Four Six."*

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-2-4. MILITARY DVFR DEPARTURES

2. BACKGROUND: Defense Visual Flight Rules (DVFR) is defined in 14 CFR 99.3 as "a flight within an Air Defense Identification Zone (ADIZ) conducted by any aircraft (except for Department of Defense and law enforcement aircraft) in accordance with visual flight rules in part 91 of this title."

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-2-4. MILITARY DVFR DEPARTURES	**2-2-4. DVFR DEPARTURES**
TERMINAL	*TERMINAL*
Forward departure times on all military DVFR departures from joint-use airports to the military operations office.	Forward departure times on all DVFR departures from joint-use airports to the military operations office.
NOTE–	***NOTE–***
1. *Details for handling air carrier, nonscheduled civil, and military DVFR flight data are contained in FAAO JO 7610.4, Special Operations.*	**1.** *Details for handling air carrier **and** nonscheduled civil DVFR flight data are contained in FAA **Order** JO 7610.4, Special Operations.*
2. *Military pilots departing DVFR from a joint-use airport will include the phrase "DVFR to (destination)" in their initial call-up to an FAA operated tower.*	**2.** *Civil pilots departing DVFR from a joint-use airport will include the phrase "DVFR to (destination)" in their initial call-up to an FAA-operated tower.*

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 2-6-3. PIREP INFORMATION

2. BACKGROUND: The FAA is responsible for providing meteorological data to stakeholders of the NAS. This includes disseminating and distributing observations, forecasts, and warning messages that pertain to volcanic activity including volcanic ash. PIREPs for volcanic activity and volcanic ash are provided to ATC in a specified format which is delineated in the Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM). These reports are then forwarded to the Volcanic Ash Advisory Centers (VAAC) and are used to issue volcanic ash SIGMETs. These changes follow new ICAO guidelines as set forth by the International Airways Volcano Watch Operations Group and are in effect as of November 2010.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
2-6-3. PIREP INFORMATION	**2-6-3. PIREP INFORMATION**
Significant PIREP information includes reports of strong frontal activity, squall lines, thunderstorms, light to severe icing, wind shear and turbulence (including clear air turbulence) of moderate or greater intensity, volcanic eruptions and volcanic ash clouds, and other conditions pertinent to flight safety.	Significant PIREP information includes reports of strong frontal activity, squall lines, thunderstorms, light to severe icing, wind shear and turbulence (including clear air turbulence) of moderate or greater intensity, volcanic eruptions and volcanic ash clouds, **detection of sulfur gases (SO_2 or H_2S) in the cabin,** and other conditions pertinent to flight safety.
REFERENCE thru **a7**	No Change
Add	**8. Detection of sulfur gases (SO_2 or H_2S), associated with volcanic activity, in the cabin.**

Add	***NOTE-*** ***The smell of sulfur gases in the cockpit may indicate volcanic activity that has not yet been detected or reported and/or possible entry into an ash-bearing cloud. SO_2 is identifiable as the sharp, acrid odor of a freshly struck match. H_2S has the odor of rotten eggs.***
a**8**	Renumber to a**9**

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-7-2. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS

2. BACKGROUND: The FAA Administrator has made numerous recommendations to enhance runway safety. ATO-T Safety and Operations Support assembled a Safety Risk Management Panel (SRMP) to address some of the proposals from this workgroup. The panel completed a safety assessment on taxi procedures at tower controlled airports and concurred with a recommendation to require detailed routings be issued to all aircraft and vehicles on the movement area. The panel determined this would enhance runway safety.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3-7-2. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS	**3-7-2. TAXI AND GROUND MOVEMENT OPERATIONS**
title thru **b**	No Change
Add	***NOTE–*** ***If the specific taxi route ends into a connecting taxiway with the same identifier (for example, taxiway "A" connects with Taxiway "A1") at the approach end of the runway, the connecting taxiway may be omitted from the clearance.***

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-9-9. TAKEOFF CLEARANCE

2. BACKGROUND: The original change (7110.65U, Change 1) established requirements for aircraft landing on or departing from runways that have a temporary or permanent change in runway length due to construction. Changes include: the requirement to use the term "shortened" on the ATIS; use of the term "shortened" in conjunction with all takeoff and landing clearances for a specified period; and prohibits use of the term "full length" when runway lengths have been temporarily shortened.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3-9-9. TAKEOFF CLEARANCE	**3-9-9. TAKEOFF CLEARANCE**
title thru **g1**	No Change
2. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the takeoff clearance until the Airport/Facility Directory is updated to include the change(s) when the runway is permanently shortened.	2. The addition of "shortened" must be included in the takeoff clearance until the Airport/Facility Directory is updated to include the change(s) when the runway is permanently shortened.
PHRASEOLOGY– *RUNWAY (number) SHORTENED, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.*	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** *RUNWAY (number) SHORTENED, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.*

EXAMPLE– *"Runway Two-Seven shortened, cleared for takeoff."* ***PHRASEOLOGY–*** *RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator) INTERSECTION DEPARTURE (remaining length) FEET AVAILABLE.* ***EXAMPLE–*** *"Runway Two-Seven at Juliet, intersection departure, 5600 feet available."* ***REFERENCE–*** *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-11, Airport Construction* *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-12, Change in Runway Length Due to Construction*	***EXAMPLE–*** *"Runway Two-Seven shortened, cleared for takeoff."* ***PHRASEOLOGY–*** *RUNWAY (number) AT (taxiway designator) INTERSECTION DEPARTURE* ***SHORTENED, CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF.*** ***EXAMPLE–*** *"Runway Two-Seven at Juliet, intersection departure* ***shortened, cleared for takeoff****."* ***REFERENCE–*** *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-11, Airport Construction* *FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 10-3-12, Change in Runway Length Due to Construction*

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 3-10-1. LANDING INFORMATION

2. BACKGROUND: In 2012 the Root Cause Analysis Team (RCAT) submitted a safety recommendation to Runway Safety Council (RSC) that a change to paragaraph 3-10-1 "Landing Information" FAA Order JO 7110.65 be made. The request recommends air traffic controllers provide pilots with additional information when using the term "continue." This recommendation was presented to Terminal Operations & Procedures to process the minor formatting change to the paragraph for clarity.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
3-10-1. LANDING INFORMATION	**3-10-1. LANDING INFORMATION**
title thru **a**	No Change
PHRASEOLOGY– *ENTER LEFT/RIGHT BASE.* *STRAIGHT-IN.* *MAKE STRAIGHT-IN.* *STRAIGHT-IN APPROVED.* *RIGHT TRAFFIC.* *MAKE RIGHT TRAFFIC.* *RIGHT TRAFFIC APPROVED. CONTINUE.*	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** *ENTER LEFT/RIGHT BASE.* *STRAIGHT-IN.* *MAKE STRAIGHT-IN.* *STRAIGHT-IN APPROVED.* *RIGHT TRAFFIC.* *MAKE RIGHT TRAFFIC.* *RIGHT TRAFFIC APPROVED.*
Add	***CONTINUE.***
Add	***NOTE-*** ***Additional information should normally be issued with instructions to continue. Example: "continue, report one mile final"; "continue, expect landing clearance two mile final"; etc.***

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-3-4. DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES

2. BACKGROUND: One of the first steps in the Joint Planning and Development Office's (JPDO) plans for the Next-Generation Air Transportation System (NextGen) and the Operational Evolution Partnership (OEP) Flight Plan objectives is to develop and deploy a versatile, nationwide, time-based metering capability. JPDO and OEP plans document an end-to-end time based flow management system that provides a more efficient alternative to today's miles-in-trail restrictions and ground stops. Traffic Management Advisor (TMA) is a

comprehensive, automated method of planning efficient arrival trajectories from cruise altitude to the runway threshold. TMA increases situational awareness through its graphical displays, timelines, and load graphs. TMA trajectories are optimized for each aircraft to permit an accurate estimated time of arrival at an airport and provide scheduled times of arrival (meter times) that optimize the flow of traffic into a terminal area. Now that Phase 1 of the TMA development is complete, planning for the next generation of Time-Based Flow Management (TBFM) has begun. Phase 2 will include additional TMA airports, improve the functionality of TMA in support of Adjacent Center Metering (ACM), TRACON Metering, Enhanced Departure Capability (EDC), and point-in-space metering.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-3-4. DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES	**4-3-4. DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES**
title thru **c**	No Change
d. When expect departure clearance times (EDCT) are assigned through traffic management programs, the departure terminal must, to the extent possible, plan ground movement of aircraft destined to the affected airport(s) so that flights are sequenced to depart no earlier than 5 minutes before, and no later than 5 minutes after the EDCT. Do not release aircraft on their assigned EDCT if a ground stop (GS) applicable to that aircraft is in effect, unless approval has been received from the originator of the GS.	**d.** When expect departure clearance times (EDCT) are assigned through traffic management programs, **excluding overriding call for release (CFR) operations as described in subparagraph e,** the departure terminal must, to the extent possible, plan ground movement of aircraft destined to the affected airport(s) so that flights are sequenced to depart no earlier than 5 minutes before, and no later than 5 minutes after the EDCT. Do not release aircraft on their assigned EDCT if a ground stop (GS) applicable to that aircraft is in effect, unless approval has been received from the originator of the GS.
d1 thru **d3 NOTE**	No Change
Add	**e. Call for Release (CFR). When CFR is in effect, release aircraft so they are airborne within a window that extends from 2 minutes prior and ends 1 minute after the assigned time, unless otherwise coordinated.**
Add	***NOTE–*** **1.** ***Subparagraph (e) applies to all facilities.*** **2.** ***Coordination may be verbal, electronic, or written.***

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE

2. BACKGROUND: Confusion exists within the controller and pilot communities concerning approach clearances for RNAV equipped aircraft and when a pilot is required to make a hold-in-lieu of procedure turn when there is a hold-in-lieu pattern depicted at an in Ctermediate fix (IF) or initial approach fix (IAF). Additionally, controllers and pilots are not always clear which fix is the IF or when it is appropriate to clear aircraft to a fix between the IF and final approach fix (FAF). Lastly, groups representing the airline and business aircraft operators have also requested the method of clearing aircraft to the IF on RNAV or GPS approaches be extended to conventional instrument approach procedures. In addition to the above, changes are being made that take into account new criteria from the Flight Standards Service related to the title of an instrument approach procedure so

that instrument landing system (ILS) approaches can be issued and when the glideslope is out of service, a localizer (LOC) approach clearance can be issued.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE	**4-8-1. APPROACH CLEARANCE**
a. Clear aircraft for "standard" or "special" instrument approach procedures only. To require an aircraft to execute a particular instrument approach procedure, specify in the approach clearance the name of the approach as published on the approach chart. Where more than one procedure is published on a single chart and a specific procedure is to be flown, amend the approach clearance to specify execution of the specific approach to be flown. If only one instrument approach of a particular type is published, the approach needs not be identified by the runway reference. An aircraft conducting an ILS/MLS approach, when the glideslope/glidepath is reported out of service must be advised at the time an approach clearance is issued. Standard Instrument Approach Procedures must commence at an Initial Approach Fix or an Intermediate Approach Fix if there is not an Initial Approach Fix. Area Navigation (RNAV) Standard Instrument Approach Procedures may begin at an Intermediate Approach Fix for aircraft that have filed an Advanced RNAV equipment suffix when the conditions of subpara b4 are met. Where adequate radar coverage exists, radar facilities may vector aircraft to the final approach course in accordance with para 5-9-1, Vectors to Final Approach Course.	a. Clear aircraft for "standard" or "special" instrument approach procedures only. To require an aircraft to execute a particular instrument approach procedure, specify in the approach clearance the name of the approach as published on the approach chart. Where more than one procedure is published on a single chart and a specific procedure is to be flown, amend the approach clearance to specify execution of the specific approach to be flown. If only one instrument approach of a particular type is published, the approach needs not be identified by the runway reference. An aircraft conducting an ILS **or LDA** approach when the glideslope is reported out of service must be advised at the time an approach clearance is issued **unless the title of the published approach procedure allows (for example, ILS Rwy 05 or LOC Rwy 05)**. Standard **i**nstrument **a**pproach **p**rocedures **(SIAP)** must **begin** at an **i**nitial **a**pproach **f**ix **(IAF)** or an **i**ntermediate **f**ix **(IF)** if there is not an **IAF**. Where adequate radar coverage exists, radar facilities may vector aircraft to the final approach course**, or clear an aircraft to any fix 3 NM or more prior to the FAF along the final approach course** in accordance with **P**ara**graph** 5-9-1, Vectors to Final Approach Course**, and Paragraph 5-9-2, Final Approach Course Interception**.

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED (type) APPROACH.

(For a straight in approach- IFR),

CLEARED STRAIGHT IN (type) APPROACH.

(To authorize a pilot to execute his/her choice of instrument approach),

CLEARED APPROACH.

(Where more than one procedure is published on a single chart and a specific procedure is to be flown),

CLEARED (specific procedure to be flown) APPROACH.

(To authorize a pilot to execute an ILS/MLS approach when the glideslope/glidepath is out of service),

CLEARED (type) APPROACH, GLIDESLOPE/GLIDEPATH UNUSABLE.

Add

Add

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared Approach."
"Cleared V-O-R Approach."
"Cleared V-O-R Runway Three Six Approach."
"Cleared F-M-S Approach."
"Cleared F-M-S Runway Three Six Approach."
"Cleared I-L-S Approach."

Add

"Cleared Localizer Back Course Runway One Three Approach."
"Cleared R-NAV Runway Two Two Approach."
"Cleared GPS Runway Two Approach."
"Cleared BRANCH ONE R-NAV Arrival and R-NAV Runway One Three Approach."
"Cleared I-L-S Runway Three Six Approach, glideslope unusable."
"Cleared M-L-S Approach."
"Cleared M-L-S Runway Three Six Approach."
"Cleared M-L-S Runway Three Six Approach, glidepath unusable."

Note 1 thru **Note 2**

PHRASEOLOGY–
CLEARED (type) APPROACH.

(For a straight in approach- IFR),

CLEARED STRAIGHT IN (type) APPROACH.

(To authorize a pilot to execute his/her choice of instrument approach),

CLEARED APPROACH.

(Where more than one procedure is published on a single chart and a specific procedure is to be flown),

CLEARED (specific procedure to be flown) APPROACH.

*(To authorize a pilot to execute an ILS **or an LDA** approach when the glideslope is out of service),*

*CLEARED (**ILS**/**LDA**) APPROACH, GLIDESLOPE UNUSABLE.*

(When the title of the approach procedure contains "or LOC")

CLEARED LOCALIZER APPROACH

EXAMPLE–
"Cleared Approach."
"Cleared V-O-R Approach."
"Cleared V-O-R Runway Three-Six Approach."
*"Cleared **L-D-A** Approach."*
*"Cleared **L-D-A** Runway Three-Six Approach."*
"Cleared I-L-S Approach."

"Cleared Localizer Approach."

"Cleared Localizer Back Course Runway One-Three Approach."
*"Cleared RNAV **Z** Runway Two-Two Approach."*
"Cleared GPS Runway Two Approach."
"Cleared BRANCH ONE Arrival and RNAV Runway One-Three Approach."
"Cleared I-L-S Runway Three-Six Approach, glideslope unusable."
*"Cleared **S-D-F** Approach."*
*"Cleared **G-L-S** Approach."*

Delete

No Change

3. *The name of the approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, other than the localizer on an ILS or the azimuth on an MLS is inoperative. Where more than one procedure to the same runway is published on a single chart, each must adhere to all final approach guidance contained on that chart, even though each procedure will be treated as a separate entity when authorized by ATC. For example, Instrument Approach Procedures published on a chart as either HI-VOR/DME or TACAN 1 would be stated as either "HI V-O-R/D-M-E 1 Runway Six Left Approach" or "HI TACAN 1 Runway Six Left Approach." The use of numerical identifiers in the approach name, or alphabetical identifiers with a letter from the end of the alphabet; e.g. X, Y, Z, such as "HI TACAN 1 Rwy 6L or HI TACAN 2 Rwy 6L," or "RNAV (GPS) Z Rwy 04 or RNAV (GPS) Y Rwy 04," denotes multiple straight-in approaches to the same runway that use the same approach aid. Alphabetical suffixes with a letter from the beginning of the alphabet; e.g., A, B, C, denote a procedure that does not meet the criteria for straight-in landing minimums authorization.*	***3. In some cases, t****he name of the approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, other than the localizer on an ILS is inoperative. Where more than one procedure to the same runway is published on a single chart, each must adhere to all final approach guidance contained on that chart, even though each procedure will be treated as a separate entity when authorized by ATC. The use of* ***alphabetical*** *identifiers in the approach name with a letter from the end of the alphabet;* ***for example,*** *X, Y, Z, such as "HI TACAN* ***Z*** *Rwy 6L or HI TACAN* ***Y*** *Rwy 6L," or "RNAV (GPS) Z Rwy 04 or RNAV (GPS) Y Rwy 04," denotes multiple straight-in approaches to the same runway that use the same approach aid. Alphabetical suffixes with a letter from the beginning of the alphabet;* ***for example****, A, B, C, denote a procedure that does not meet the criteria for straight-in landing minimums authorization.*
4. *14 CFR Section 91.175(j) requires a pilot to receive a clearance for a procedure turn when vectored to a final approach fix or position, conducting a timed approach, or when the procedure specifies "NO PT".*	***4.*** *14 CFR Section 91.175(j) requires a pilot to receive a clearance* ***to conduct*** *a procedure turn when vectored to a final approach* ***course or fix****, conducting a timed approach, or when the procedure specifies "NO PT."*
Note 5 thru **b**	No Change
FIG 4-8-1 **Approach Clearance Example** REFER TO FIGURE ON PAGE 4−8−2	***FIG 4-8-1*** **Approach Clearance Example** REFER TO FIGURE ON PAGE 4−8−2
1. Established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure.	1. Established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure**, or**
EXAMPLE− ***Aircraft 1:*** *The aircraft is established on a segment of a published route at 5,000 feet. "Cleared V-O-R Runway Three Four Approach."*	***EXAMPLE−*** ***Aircraft 1:*** *The aircraft is established on a segment of a published route at 5,000 feet. "Cleared V-O-R Runway Three Four Approach."*
b2 thru **NOTE**	No Change
Add	**c. Except for visual approaches, do not clear an aircraft direct to the FAF unless it is also an IAF, wherein the aircraft is expected to execute the depicted procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of procedure turn.**
Add	**d. For RNAV-equipped aircraft operating on unpublished routes, issue approach clearance for conventional or RNAV SIAP only after the aircraft is:**

Add

1. Established on a heading or course direct to the IAF at an intercept angle not greater than 90 degrees and is assigned an altitude in accordance with b2. Radar monitoring is required for RNAV (RNP) approaches when no procedure turn or hold−in−lieu of procedure turn will be executed.

Add

2. Established on a heading or course direct to the IF at an angle not greater than 90 degrees, provided the following conditions are met:

Add

(a) Assign an altitude in accordance with b2 that will permit a normal descent to the FAF.

Add

NOTE-
Controllers should expect aircraft to descend at approximately 150-300 feet per nautical mile when applying guidance in subpara d2(a).

Add

(b) Radar monitoring is provided to the IF.

Add

(c) The SIAP must identify the intermediate fix with the letters "IF."

Add

(d) For procedures where an IAF is published, the pilot is advised to expect clearance to the IF at least 5 miles from the fix.

3. Established on a heading or course that will intercept the initial segment at the initial approach fix, or intermediate segment at the intermediate fix when no initial approach fix is published, for a GPS or RNAV instrument approach procedure at an angle not greater than 90 degrees. Angles greater than 90 degrees may be used when a hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern is depicted at the fix for the instrument approach procedure. (See FIG 4-8-2.)

3. Established on a heading or course **direct to a fix between the IF and FAF, in accordance with Paragraph 5-9-1, Vectors to Final Approach Course, and Paragraph 5-9-2, Final Approach Course Interception.** (See FIG 4-8-2.)

Add

REFERENCE−
FAAO 7110.65, Par 5-6-2, Methods
FAAO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals

FIG 4-8-2

Approach Clearance Example for RNAV Aircraft

REFER TO FIGURE ON PAGE 4−8−3

FIG 4-8-2

Approach Clearance Example for RNAV Aircraft

REFER TO FIGURE ON PAGE 4−8−3

EXAMPLE– *Aircraft 1 can be cleared direct to CENTR. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. If a hold in lieu of pattern is depicted and a straight-in area is not defined (e.g., " No PT" indicated at the fix), the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a procedure turn. "Cleared direct CENTR, maintain at or above three thousand until CENTR, cleared straight-in R-NAV Runway One Eight approach."* *Aircraft 2 cannot be cleared direct to CENTR unless the aircraft is allowed to execute a procedure turn. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct LEFTT, maintain at or above three thousand until LEFTT, cleared R-NAV Runway One Eight approach." The pilot does not have to be cleared for a straight-in approach since no hold in lieu of pattern is depicted at LEFTT.*	***EXAMPLE–*** *Aircraft 1 can be cleared direct to CENTR. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. If a hold in lieu of* ***procedure turn*** *pattern is depicted and a straight-in area is not defined (****for example****, " No PT" indicated at the fix), the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a* ***hold-in-lieu*** *procedure turn. "Cleared direct CENTR, maintain at or above three thousand until CENTR, cleared straight-in RNAV Runway One Eight approach."* *Aircraft 2 cannot be cleared direct to CENTR unless the aircraft is allowed to execute* ***the hold-in-lieu-of*** *procedure turn. The intercept angle at that* ***IF****/IAF is* ***greater than*** *90 degrees. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct* ***CENTR****, maintain at or above three thousand until* ***CENTR****, cleared RNAV Runway One Eight approach." The pilot* ***is expected to proceed direct CENTR and execute the*** *hold-in-lieu of* ***procedure turn****.*
Add	***Aircraft 2 can be cleared direct LEFTT. The intercept angle at that IAF is 90 degrees or less. The minimum altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along the flight path to the IAF is 3,000 feet. "Cleared direct LEFTT, maintain at or above three thousand until LEFTT, cleared RNAV One-Eight approach." The pilot does not have to be cleared for a straight-in approach since no hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern is depicted at LEFTT.***
Add	***Aircraft 1 is more than 5 miles from SHANN. SHANN is a step down fix between the IF (CENTR) and the FAF. To clear Aircraft 1 to SHANN, ATC must ensure the intercept angle for the intermediate segment at SHANN is not greater than 30 degrees as described in paragraphs 5-9-2 and must be cleared to an altitude that will allow a normal descent to the FAF "Expect vectors to SHANN for RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."***
Add	***REFERENCE–*** ***FAAO JO 7110.65, Chapter 5, Section 9, Radar Arrivals***

Add	**e. For both RNAV and conventional approaches, intercept angles greater than 90 degrees may be used when a procedure turn, a hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern, or arrival holding is depicted and the pilot will execute the procedure. If a procedure turn, hold-in-lieu of procedure turn, or arrival holding pattern is depicted and the angle of intercept is 90 degrees or less, the aircraft must be instructed to conduct a straight-in approach if ATC does not want the pilot to execute a procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of procedure turn. (See FIG 4-8-3.)**
Add	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** ***CLEARED STRAIGHT-IN (type) APPROACH***
Add	***NOTE–*** **1.** ***Restate "cleared straight-in" in the approach clearance even if the pilot was advised earlier to expect a straight-in approach.***
Add	**2.** ***Some approach charts have an arrival holding pattern depicted at the IAF using a "thin line" holding symbol. It is charted where holding is frequently required prior to starting the approach procedure so that detailed holding instructions are not required. The arrival holding pattern is not authorized unless assigned by ATC.***
Add	***EXAMPLE–*** ***"Cleared direct SECND, maintain at or above three thousand until SECND, cleared straight-in ILS Runway One-Eight approach."***
Add	***REFERENCE–*** *AIM, Paragraph 5-4-5, Instruction Approach Procedure Charts* *AIM, Paragraph 5-4-9, Procedure Turn and Hold-in-Lieu of Procedure Turn*
Add	***FIG 4-8-3*** **Approach Clearance Example for RNAV Aircraft On a Conventional Approach**
Add	REFER TO GIFURE ON PAGE 4–8–4
Add	***EXAMPLE–*** ***Aircraft 1 can be cleared direct to XYZ VORTAC, and SECND because the intercept angle is 90 degrees or less.*** ***Aircraft 2 cannot be cleared to XYZ VORTAC because the intercept angle is greater than 90 degrees.*** ***Aircraft 2 can be cleared to SECND if allowed to execute the hold-in-lieu of procedure turn pattern.***
4. Established on a heading or course that will intercept the intermediate segment at the intermediate fix, when an initial approach fix is published, provided the following conditions are met:	Delete

(a) The instrument approach procedure is a GPS or RNAV approach.	Delete
(b) Radar monitoring is provided to the Intermediate Fix.	Delete
(c) The aircraft has filed an Advanced RNAV equipment suffix.	Delete
(d) The pilot is advised to expect clearance direct to the Intermediate Fix at least 5 miles from the fix.	Delete
(e) The aircraft is assigned an altitude to maintain until the Intermediate Fix.	Delete
(f) The aircraft is on a course that will intercept the intermediate segment at an angle not greater than 90 degrees and is at an altitude that will permit normal descent from the Intermediate Fix to the Final Approach Fix.	Delete
NOTE– *Controllers should expect aircraft to descend at approximately 300 feet per NM when applying guidance in subpara 4(f) above.*	Delete
	Add **f. Clear RNAV-equipped aircraft conducting RNAV instrument approach procedures that contain radius to fix (RF) legs:**
	Add **1. Via published transitions, or**
	Add **2. On a heading or course direct to the IAF/IF when a hold-in-lieu of procedure turn is published and the pilot will execute the procedure, or**
	Add **3. On a heading or course direct to the IAF/IF, at intercept angles no greater than 90 degrees and the distance to the waypoint beginning the RF leg is 6NM or greater, or**
	Add **4. With radar monitoring, on a heading or course direct to any waypoint 3 miles or more from the waypoint that begins the RF leg, at an intercept angle not greater than 30 degrees. (See FIG 4-8-4.)**
	Add ***NOTE–*** **1.** ***RNAV approaches (containing RF legs) that commence at 10,000 feet or above require special procedures that will be site specific and specified in a facility directive.***
	Add **2.** ***An RF leg is defined as a curved segment indicating a constant radius circular path about a defined turn center that begins at a waypoint. RF legs may have maximum airspeeds charted for procedural containment that must be followed.***
	Add **3.** ***If an aircraft is vectored off the procedure, expect the aircraft to request a return to an IAF.***

Add

Add

Add

Add

Add

Add

Add

FIG 4-8-4

Radius to Fix (RF) and Track to Fix (TF)

REFER TO GRAPHIC ON PAGE 4−8−4

NOTE−

1. ***The segment between THIRD and FORTH in FIG 4-8-4 is an RF leg.***

2. ***The straight segments between waypoints in FIG 4-8-4 are TF legs.***

3. ***Aircraft cannot be vectored or cleared direct THIRD because that waypoint begins an RF leg.***

4. ***Aircraft cannot be vectored or cleared to TURNN or vectored to intercept the approach segment at any point between THIRD and FORTH because this is the RF leg.***

EXAMPLE−

Aircraft 1 can be cleared to SCOND because the distance to THIRD, where the RF leg begins is 3NM or greater and the intercept angle will be 30 degrees or less and is radar monitored.

Aircraft 2 can be cleared direct to FIRST because the intercept angle is 90 degrees or less and the distance from FIRST to THIRD is 6NM or greater.

Paragraphs c and **d**

e. Where a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches use the procedures under subpara b1 and b2 above. (See FIG 4-8-3.)

EXAMPLE−

Aircraft 1: *The aircraft has crossed the TAA boundary and is established on a segment of the approach. "Cleared R-NAV Runway One Eight Approach."*

Aircraft 2: *The aircraft is inbound to the CHARR (right corner) IAF on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along this flight path to the IAF is 5,000 feet. "Cleared direct CHARR, Maintain at or above five thousand until entering the TAA, Cleared R-NAV Runway One Eight Approach."*

FIG 4-8-3

Basic "T" and TAA Design

FIG

Subparagraphs f thru **h**

Re-letter **g** and **h**

i. Where a **t**erminal **a**rrival **a**rea (TAA) has been established to support RNAV approaches**,** use the procedures under subpara b1 and b2 above. (See FIG 4-8-**5**.)

EXAMPLE−

Aircraft 1: *The aircraft has crossed the TAA boundary and is **therefore** established on a segment of the approach. "Cleared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."*

Aircraft 2: *The aircraft is inbound to the CHARR IAF on an unpublished direct route at 7,000 feet. The minimum IFR altitude for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177) along this flight path to the IAF is 5,000 feet. "Cleared direct CHARR, **m**aintain at or above five thousand until entering the TAA, **c**leared RNAV Runway One-Eight Approach."*

FIG 4-8-5

Basic "T" and TAA Design

REFER TO GRAPHIC ON PAGE 4−8−5

Re-number **j** thru **l**

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
5-4-3. METHODS
5−4−5. TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF
5-4-7. POINT OUT

2. BACKGROUND: Before 1980, FAA Order JO 7110.65, paragraph 5-4-3, contained additional information to be included when conducting handoffs and/or pointouts. This additional information was called ”other pertinent information that was not available to the receiving controller” and generally was direction of flight information such as route, heading, observed track, etc. In 1980, this information was removed from the paragraph and an appendix was added that provided very detailed information, examples, and phraseology for the transfer of control of aircraft. In 1988, the appendix was removed from JO 7110.65; however, no information was reintroduced into paragraph 5-4-3. Paragraph 5-4-3 is being revised to include this type of information.

This change adds “speed” to the parameters that are coordinated during handoff to highlight the effect of uncoordinated aircraft speed adjustments within a sector. Controllers accept point outs and make decisions based on visual data. When an aircraft makes uncoordinated changes in the airspace the controller’s entire traffic situation can be adversely affected. This change cancels and incorporates N JO 7110.603, Pertinent Handoff and Point Out Information, effective October 15, 2012.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
5-4-3. METHODS	**5-4-3. METHODS**
title thru **b3 NOTE**	No Change
Add	**4. Advise the receiving controller of pertinent information not contained in the data block or available flight data unless covered in an LOA or facility directive. Pertinent information may include:**
Add	**(a) Assigned heading.**
Add	**(b) Speed/altitude restrictions.**
Add	**(c) Observed track or deviation from the last route clearance.**
Add	**(d) Any other pertinent information.**
PHRASEOLOGY– *HANDOFF/POINT-OUT/TRAFFIC (aircraft position)(aircraft ID),* *or* *(discrete beacon code point-out only) (altitude, restrictions, and other appropriate information, if applicable).*	***PHRASEOLOGY–*** *HANDOFF/POINT-OUT/TRAFFIC (aircraft position)(aircraft ID),* *or* *(discrete beacon code point-out only) (altitude, restrictions, and other **pertinent** information, if applicable).*

OLD	NEW
5−4−5. TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF	**5-4-5. TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER HANDOFF**

title thru **a**

b. Verbally obtain the receiving controller's approval prior to making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, or data block information while the handoff is being initiated or after acceptance, unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

No Change

b. Verbally obtain the receiving controller's approval prior to making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, **speed,** or data block information while the handoff is being initiated or after acceptance, unless otherwise specified by a LOA or a facility directive.

OLD

5-4-7. POINT OUT

title thru **a1**

2. Obtain the receiving controller's approval before making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, or data block information after the point out has been approved.

NEW

5-4-7. POINT OUT

No Change

2. Obtain the receiving controller's approval before making any changes to an aircraft's flight path, altitude, **speed,** or data block information after the point out has been approved.

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 5-5-4. MINIMA

2. BACKGROUND: MEARTS Single Source Polygon was developed for MEARTS facilities to provide radar coverage in areas where the Single Sensor Mode radar had no coverage and single sensor radar was required. Single Sensor Polygon allows the controller to remain in Mosaic Mode and transition to 5 mile radar separation instead of nonradar separation when the single sensor is not receiving a target return. This is accomplished by using automation to display targets not eligible for three mile separation differently than targets that are eligible for three mile separation. This procedure became operational in the San Juan Combined Center/RAPCON (CERAP) on November 3, 2007 and no incidents have occurred and no new hazards have been identified.

3. CHANGE:

OLD

5-5-4. MINIMA

title thru **a3**

b. Stage A/DARC, MEARTS Mosaic Mode, Terminal Mosaic/Multi-Sensor Mode:

b1 thru **b4(d)**

c. MEARTS Mosaic Mode:

Add

Add

Add

Add

NOTE–

1. *Sensor Mode displays information from the radar input of a single site.*

2. *Procedures to convert MEARTS Mosaic Mode to MEARTS Sensor Mode at each PVD/MDM will be established by facility directive.*

Add

NEW

5-5-4. MINIMA

No Change

b. Stage A/DARC, Terminal Mosaic/ Multi-Sensor Mode:

No Change

c. MEARTS Mosaic Mode:

1. Below FL 600- ***5 miles.***

2. At or above FL 600- ***10 miles.***

3. For areas meeting all of the following conditions – ***3 miles*****:**

(a) Radar site adaptation is set to single sensor mode.

NOTE–

1. ***Single s****ensor Mode displays information from the radar input of a single site.*

2. *Procedures to convert MEARTS Mosaic Mode to MEARTS* ***Single*** *Sensor Mode at each PVD/MDM will be established by facility directive.*

(b) Significant operational advantages can be obtained.

Add	**(c) Within 40 miles of the antenna.**
Add	**(d) Below FL 180.**
Add	**(e) Facility directives specifically define the area where the separation can be applied and define the requirements for displaying the area on the controller's PVD/MDM.**
Add	**4. MEARTS Mosaic Mode Utilizing Single Source Polygon (San Juan CERAP and Honolulu Control Facility only) when meeting all of the following conditions– *3 miles*:**
1. When less than 40 miles from the antenna – *3 miles*	**(a) L**ess than 40 miles from the antenna**, below FL180, and targets are from the adapted sensor**.
Add	**(b) The single source polygon must be displayed on the controller's PVD/MDM.**
Add	**(c) Significant operational advantages can be obtained.**
Add	**(d) Facility directives specifically define the single source polygon area where the separation can be applied and specify procedures to be used.**
Add	**(e) Controller must commence a transition to achieve either vertical separation or 5 mile lateral separation in the event that either target is not from the adapted sensor.**
2. When 40 miles or more from the antenna – *5 miles.*	Delete

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
8-10-1. APPLICATION
8-10-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION
8-10-4. LATERAL SEPARATION

2. BACKGROUND: The North American (NAM) ICAO Region encompasses both Anchorage Arctic Control Area (CTA) and Anchorage Continental CTA; therefore, a change to the area of application of separation in those areas is necessary to maintain consistency with other Section titles in Chapter 8.

There is a need to add a provision to FAA Order JO 7110.65 for 50NM longitudinal (D50) separation as well as 30NM lateral/30NM longitudinal (30/30) separation within the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs.

Due to changes in separation requirements, a provision to FAA Order JO 7110.65 is necessary to reflect a standard of 30NM lateral within the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	**NEW**
Section 10. North American ICAO Region-Arctic CTA	Section 10. North American ICAO Region

8-10-1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the North American ICAO Region – Arctic CTA with the procedures and minima contained in this section.

8-10-1. APPLICATION

Provide air traffic control services in the North American ICAO Region with the procedures and minima contained in this section.

OLD

8-10-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 3, Longitudinal Separation, apply the following:

Add

a. *15 minutes* between turbojet aircraft.

b. The prescribed minima in accordance with para 8-3-3, Mach Number Technique.

c. *20 minutes* between other aircraft.

Add

Add

Add

Add

Add

Add

Add

Add

NEW

8-10-3. LONGITUDINAL SEPARATION

In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 3, Longitudinal Separation, apply the following:

a. Minima based on time:

1. *15 minutes* between turbojet aircraft; or

2. The prescribed minima in accordance with **P**ara**graph** 8-3-3, Mach Number Technique; or

3. *20 minutes* between other aircraft.

b. Minima based on distance using Automatic Dependent Surveillance – Contract (ADS-C) in the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs only:

NOTE-
The minima described in this paragraph are not applicable within airspace in the Anchorage Arctic CTA.

1. Apply the minima as specified in TBL 8-10-1 between aircraft on the same track within airspace in the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs designated for Required Navigation Performance (RNP), provided:

(a) Direct controller/pilot communication via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC) is established, and

(b) The required ADS-C periodic reports are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (for example, Ocean21).

TBL 8-10-1

ADS-C Criteria

ADD TABLE

2. Aircraft on reciprocal tracks in the Anchorage Oceanic and Anchorage Continental CTAs may be cleared to climb or descend to or through the altitude(s) occupied by another aircraft provided:

(a) An ADS-C position report on at least one of the aircraft has been received beyond the passing point, and

Add	**(b) The aircraft have passed each other by the applicable separation minimum.**
Add	***NOTE-*** ***Ocean21 has been designed to check for the above criteria prior to allowing the minima to be provided.***
Add	**3. When an ADS-C periodic or waypoint change event report is overdue by *3 minutes*, the controller must take action to obtain an ADS-C report.**
Add	**4. If no report is received within *6 minutes* of the time the original report was due, the controller must take action to apply another form of separation.**

OLD	NEW
8-10-4. LATERAL SEPARATION	**8-10-4. LATERAL SEPARATION**
In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 4, Lateral Separation, apply the following:	In accordance with Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures, Section 4, Lateral Separation, apply the following:
a Provide *90 NM* lateral separation between aircraft, or	a. ***50 NM* to RNP−10 approved aircraft within areas where RNP−10 separation and procedures are authorized,**
b. Lower minima in para 5.4.1 of Chapter 5 of the Procedures for Air Navigation−Services, Air Traffic Management (PANS−ATM), (Doc 4444−ATM/501) may be applied or further reduced in accordance with para 5.11 of the same part where the conditions specified in the relevant PANS−ATM are met.	b.***30 NM* to RNP−4 approved aircraft operating within the Anchorage Oceanic CTA and Anchorage Continental CTA when direct controller/pilot communications, via voice or Controller Pilot Data Link Communications (CPDLC), and the required ADS−C contracts are maintained and monitored by an automated flight data processor (for example, Ocean21).**
Add	***NOTE-*** ***The minimum described in subparagraph b is not applicable within airspace in the Anchorage Arctic CTA.***
Add	**c. *90 NM* to aircraft not covered by subparagraphs a or b.**

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 9-2-9. SPECIAL INTEREST SITES

2. BACKGROUND: Air traffic facilities have asked for a clarification as to the specific responsibilities of air traffic controllers under paragraph 9-2-9, Special Interest Sites.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
9-2-9. SPECIAL INTEREST SITES	**9-2-9. SPECIAL INTEREST SITES**

a. Relay immediately to supervisory/CIC personnel any reports or information regarding unusual aircraft activities in the vicinity of special interest sites such as nuclear power plants, power plants, dams, refineries, etc. Supervisory/CIC personnel may also receive reports/information from the Nuclear Regulatory Commission or other sources.	**I**mmediately **relay** any reports or information regarding unusual aircraft activities in the vicinity of special interest sites such as nuclear power plants, power plants, dams, refineries, etc.**, to supervisory/CIC personnel**.
b. Supervisory/CIC personnel must immediately notify local law enforcement authorities of these reports/information as well as notifying the overlying air traffic facility of any of these reports and the action taken.	Delete
c. ARTCCs must promptly advise the Domestic Events Network (DEN) of any actions taken in accordance with this paragraph.	Delete
Add	***NOTE-*** ***Air traffic controllers have no responsibilities to monitor or observe aircraft in the vicinity of special interest sites unless directed by supervisory/CIC personnel.***

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE: 9-2-22. OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT

2. BACKGROUND: An earlier DCP was initiated to clarify a misunderstanding that SUA must be always be vacated for Open Skies F and D aircraft. However, that DCP raised questions and drew comments regarding its wording. The intent is to clarify that Open Skies F and D aircraft can transit active SUA but only in accordance with an LOA coordinated between the using agency and controlling agency that ensures Open Skies F and D aircraft transiting Active SUA are in compliance with paragraph 9–3-4, Transiting Active SUA/ATCAA. The LOA does not necessarily need to be specific to Open Skies, but a concern has been that para 9-3-4 could overshadow the rules of para 9-2-22c and be misinterpreted to allow Open Skies F and D flights to transit active SUA not associated with an ATC facility. When Open Skies F and D aircraft transit SUA, there must be an ATC facility that will provide standard separation services at all times. Otherwise, the SUA must be vacated. In some instances, coordination between the using agency and controlling agency can designate airspace (i.e., block altitudes, stratification, or partitioning of airspace) that provides additional separation for Open Skies F and D aircraft from activities in SUA.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	**NEW**
9-2-22. OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT	**9-2-22. OPEN SKIES TREATY AIRCRAFT**
title thru **b**	No Change

c. OPEN SKIES (F and D) Treaty aircraft, while maintaining compliance with ATC procedures, must have priority over activities in special use airspace (SUA) and must be allowed to transit such airspace as filed after appropriate and timely coordination has been accomplished between the using agency and controlling agency.	c. OPEN SKIES F and D Treaty aircraft, while maintaining compliance with ATC procedures, must have priority over activities in special use airspace (SUA) and must be allowed to transit such airspace as filed after appropriate and timely coordination has been accomplished between the using agency and controlling agency. **A letter of agreement is required between the using agency and the controlling agency for Open Skies F and D aircraft to transit active SUA. When Open Skies F and D aircraft transit SUA, an ATC facility must provide standard separation services at all times.**
Add	***REFERENCE–*** *FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9-3-4 Transiting Active SUA/ATCAA*

---

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
9-3-1. APPLICATION
9-3-2. SEPARATION MINIMA

2. BACKGROUND: There has been confusion as to the overall use of stationary ALTRVs throughout the NAS. Additionally, a need has been identified for airspace designation for very specific special operations to include commercial space, rockets, and missiles. Based on a number of non-concurs, the 7610.4 changes having to do with Stationary ALTRVs was amended.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	**NEW**
Section 3. Special Use and ATC Assigned Airspace	Section 3. Special Use**,** ATC**-**Assigned Airspace**, and Stationary ALTRVs**
9-3-1. APPLICATION	**9-3-1. APPLICATION**
Apply the procedures in this section to aircraft operating in proximity to special use or ATC assigned airspace (ATCAA) unless the airspace is designated an Alert Area/Controlled Firing Area or one of the following conditions exist:	Apply the procedures in this section to aircraft operating in proximity to special use**,** ATC**-**assigned airspace (ATCAA)**, and stationary ALTRVs** unless the airspace is designated an **a**lert **a**rea/**c**ontrolled **f**iring **a**rea or one of the following conditions exist:
Note thru **b**	No Change
c. The Restricted/Warning Area, MOA, or ATCAA has been released to the controlling agency.	c. The **r**estricted/**w**arning **a**rea, MOA, ATCAA**, or stationary ALTRV** has been released to the controlling agency.
d. The aircraft is on an approved ALTRV, unless the airspace area in question is an ATCAA.	d. The aircraft is on an approved ALTRV, unless the airspace area in question is an ATCAA.
NOTE- *Mission project officers are responsible for obtaining approval for ALTRV operations within Prohibited/ Restricted/Warning Areas and MOAs.*	***NOTE-*** *Mission project officers are responsible for obtaining approval for ALTRV operations within **p**rohibited/ **r**estricted/**w**arning **a**reas, MOAs**, and stationary***

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9-3-4, Transiting Active SUA/ATCAA

e. Operations in special use airspace located in offshore/oceanic airspace will be conducted in accordance with the procedures in Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures.

OLD

9–3–2. SEPARATION MINIMA

Unless clearance of nonparticipating aircraft in/through/adjacent to a Prohibited/Restricted/Warning Area/MOA/ATCAA is provided for in a Letter of Agreement (LOA) or Letter of Procedure (LOP), separate nonparticipating aircraft from active special use airspace by the following minima:

a. Assign an altitude consistent with para 4-5-2, Flight Direction, and 4-5-3, Exceptions, which is at least 500 feet (above FL 290-1000 feet) above/below the upper/lower limit of the Prohibited/Restricted/Warning Area/MOA/ATCAA.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2-1-17, Prohibited/Restricted Areas

b. Provide radar separation of 3 miles (En route Stage A/DARC, FL 600 and above - 6 miles) from the special use airspace peripheral boundary.

c. Clear aircraft on airways or routes whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap the peripheral boundary.

d. Exception. Some Prohibited/Restricted/Warning Areas are established for security reasons or to contain hazardous activities not involving aircraft operations. Where facility management has identified these areas as outlined in FAAO JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, vector aircraft to remain clear of the peripheral boundary.

NOTE-
Nonparticipating aircraft refers to those aircraft for which you have separation responsibility and which have not been authorized by the using agency to operate in/through the special use airspace or ATCAA in question.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7110.65, Para 9-3-4, Transiting Active SUA/ATCAA.

e. Operations in special use airspace **and stationary ALTRVs** located in offshore/oceanic airspace will be conducted in accordance with the procedures in Chapter 8, Offshore/Oceanic Procedures.

NEW

9-3-2. SEPARATION MINIMA

Unless clearance of nonparticipating aircraft in/through/adjacent to a **p**rohibited/**r**estricted/**w**arning **a**rea/MOA/ATCAA**/stationary ALTRV** is provided for in a **l**etter of **a**greement (LOA) or **l**etter of **p**rocedure (LOP), separate nonparticipating aircraft from active special use airspace**, ATCAAs, and stationary ALTRVs** by the following minima:

a. Assign an altitude consistent with para 4-5-2, Flight Direction, and 4-5-3, Exceptions, which is at least 500 feet (above FL 290-1000 feet) above/below the upper/lower limit of the **p**rohibited/ **r**estricted/**w**arning **a**rea/MOA/ATCAA**/stationary ALTRV**.

REFERENCE–
FAAO JO 7210.3, Para 2-1-17, Prohibited/Restricted Areas and Stationary ALTRVs

b. Provide radar separation of 3 miles (FL 600 and above - 6 miles) from the special use airspace**, ATCAA, or stationary ALTRV** peripheral boundary.

c. Clear aircraft on airways or routes whose widths or protected airspace do not overlap the peripheral boundary.

d. Exception. Some **p**rohibited/**r**estricted/**w**arning **a**reas are established for security reasons or to contain hazardous activities not involving aircraft operations. Where facility management has identified these areas as outlined in FAA **Order** JO 7210.3, Facility Operation and Administration, vector aircraft to remain clear of the peripheral boundary.

NOTE-
*Nonparticipating aircraft refers to those aircraft for which you have separation responsibility and which have not been authorized by the using agency to operate in/through the special use airspace**, ATCAA, or stationary ALTRV** in question. **VFR traffic is not prohibited from transiting stationary ALTRVs.***

1. PARAGRAPH NUMBER AND TITLE:
11-1-1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY
11-1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES
11-1-3. TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)

2. BACKGROUND: One of the first steps in the Joint Planning and Development Office's (JPDO) plans for the Next-Generation Air Transportation System (NextGen) and the Operational Evolution Partnership (OEP) Flight Plan objectives is to develop and deploy a versatile, nationwide, time-based metering capability. JPDO and OEP plans document an end-to-end time based flow management system that provides a more efficient alternative to today's miles-in-trail restrictions and ground stops. Traffic Management Advisor (TMA) is a comprehensive, automated method of planning efficient arrival trajectories from cruise altitude to the runway threshold. TMA increases situational awareness through its graphical displays, timelines, and load graphs. TMA trajectories are optimized for each aircraft to permit an accurate estimated time of arrival at an airport and provide scheduled times of arrival (meter times) that optimize the flow of traffic into a terminal area. Now that Phase 1 of the TMA development is complete, planning for the next generation of Time-Based Flow Management (TBFM) has begun. Phase 2 will include additional TMA airports, improve the functionality of TMA in support of Adjacent Center Metering (ACM), TRACON Metering, Enhanced Departure Capability (EDC), and point-in-space metering.

3. CHANGE:

OLD	NEW
11-1-1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY	**11-1-1. DUTY RESPONSIBILITY**
a. The traffic management system mission is to balance air traffic demand with system capacity to ensure the maximum efficient utilization of the NAS.	a. The **mission of the** traffic management system is to balance air traffic demand with system capacity to ensure the maximum efficient utilization of the NAS.
OLD	**NEW**
11-1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES	**11-1-2. DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES**
title thru **a6**	No Change
b. OS must:	b. **FLM** must:
b1 thru **c5**	No Change
Add	**d. ARTCCs, unless otherwise coordinated, must:**
Add	**1. Support TMA operations and monitor TMA equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to traffic management initiatives.**
Add	**2. Monitor arrival flow for potential metering actions/changes and, if necessary, initiate coordination with all facilities to discuss the change to the metering plan.**
Add	**e. TRACONs, unless otherwise coordinated, must:**
Add	**1. Support TMA operations and monitor TMA equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to traffic management initiatives.**

Add	**2. Monitor arrival flow for potential metering actions/changes and, if necessary, initiate coordination with all facilities to discuss the change to the metering plan.**
Add	**3. Schedule internal departures in accordance with specific written procedures and agreements developed with overlying ARTCCs and adjacent facilities.**
Add	**f. ATCTs, unless otherwise coordinated, must:**
Add	**1. Monitor TMA equipment to improve situational awareness for a system approach to traffic management initiatives.**
Add	**2. Release aircraft, when CFR is in effect, so they are airborne within a window that extends from 2 minutes prior and ends 1 minute after the assigned time.**
Add	***NOTE-*** ***Coordination may be verbal, electronic, or written.***
OLD	**NEW**
Add	**11-1-3. TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)**
Add	**During periods of metering, ATCS must:**
Add	**a. Display TMA schedule information on the main display monitor (MDM).**
Add	**b. Comply with TMA-generated metering times within +/- 1 minute.**
Add	**1. If TMA-generated metering time accuracy within +/- 1 minute cannot be used for specific aircraft due to significant jumps in the delay countdown timer (DCT), other traffic management initiatives may be used between those aircraft such as miles-in-trail (MIT) or minutes-in-trail (MINIT) to assist in delay absorption until stability resumes.**
Add	**2. An exception to the requirement to comply within +/- 1 minute may be authorized for certain ARTCC sectors if explicitly defined in an appropriate facility directive.**

Add	**c. When compliance is not possible, coordinate with FLM and adjacent facilities/sectors as appropriate.**
Add	***NOTE-*** ***TMA accuracy of generated metering times is predicated on several factors, including vectoring outside of TMA route conformance boundaries (route recovery logic), certain trajectory ground speed calculations, and when TMU resequences a specific flight or flight list. Caution should be used in these situations to minimize impact on surrounding sector traffic and complexity levels, flight efficiencies, and user preferences.***